# Service Manual <br> 2.4 GHz Cordless Phone System with FAX and Copier KX-FG2452CX 


(for Asia, Middle Near East and Other areas)


#### Abstract

This service information is designed for experienced repair technicians only and is not designed for use by the general public. It does not contain warnings or cautions to advise non-technical individuals of potential dangers in attempting to service a product. Products powered by electricity should be serviced or repaired only by experienced professional technicians. Any attempt to service or repair the product or products dealt with in this service information by anyone else could result in serious injury or death.


## IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICE

There are special components used in this equipment which are important for safety. These parts are marked by $\measuredangle$ in the Schematic Diagrams, Circuit Board Diagrams, Exploded Views and Replacement Parts List. It is essential that these critical parts should be replaced with manufacturer's specified parts to prevent shock, fire or other hazards. Do not modify the original design without permission of manufacturer.

## IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT LEAD FREE, (PbF), SOLDERING

If lead free solder was used in the manufacture of this product the printed circuit boards will be marked PbF . Standard leaded, (Pb), solder can be used as usual on boards without the PbF mark.

When this mark does appear please read and follow the special instructions described in this manual on the use of PbF and how it might be permissible to use Pb solder during service and repair work.

[^0]PAGE
1 Safety Precautions ..... -3
1.1. For Service Technicians ..... -3
1.2. AC Caution ..... -3
1.3. Personal Safety Precautions ..... -4
1.4. Service Precautions ..... -5
2 Warning ..... -6
2.1. About Lead Free Solder (PbF: Pb free) ..... -6
2.2. Insulation Resistance Test ..... -7
2.3. Battery Caution ..... $-7$
3 Specifications ..... -8
3.1. Base Unit ..... -8
3.2. Cordless Handset ..... -8
4 General/Introduction ..... -9
4.1. Optional Accessories ..... -9
5 Features ..... -9
6 Technical Descriptions ..... 10
6.1. Connection Diagram ..... 10
6.2. General Block Diagram ..... 11
6.3. Control Section ..... 13
6.4. Facsimile Section ..... 22
6.5. Sensors and Switches ..... 29
6.6. Modem Section ..... 33
6.7. Analog Section ..... 40
6.8. NCU Section ..... 42
6.9. ITS (Integrated Telephone System) and Monitor Section ..... 46
6.10. ATAS (Automatic Telephone Answering System) Section ..... 46
6.11. Operation Board Section ..... $-47$
6.12. LCD Section ..... -48
6.13. Power Supply Board Section ..... -49
6.14. Cordless Section ..... 52
7 Location of Controls and Components ..... 65
7.1. Overview ..... 65
7.2. Control Panel ..... 66
8 Installation Instructions ..... 67
8.1. Installation Space ..... $-67$
8.2. Connections ..... 68
8.3. Battery Charge ..... 68
8.4. Installing the Ink Film ..... 69
8.5. Installing the Paper Tray ..... 71
8.6. Paper Support ..... 71
8.7. Installing the Recording Paper ..... -72
8.8. Battery Installation / Replacement ..... 73
8.9. Headset (optional) ..... 73
9 Operation Instructions ..... 74
9.1. Setting Your Logo ..... 74
9.2. Cordless Handset Programming ..... 75
10 Test Mode ..... 77
10.1. Facsimile Section ..... 77
10.2. Cordless Section ..... 80
11 Service Mode ..... 87
11.1. Programming and Lists ..... 87
11.2. How to Clear User Setting ..... 91
11.3. The Example of the Printed List ..... 92
12 Troubleshooting Guide ..... 96
12.1. Troubleshooting Summary ..... 96
12.2. Error Messages-Display ..... 97

PAGE
12.3. Error Messages-Report --------------------------------100
12.4. Remote Programming ----------------------------------122
12.5. Troubleshooting Details --------------------------------125

13 Service Fixture \& Tools -------------------------------------169
14 Disassembly and Assembly Instructions -------------170
14.1. General Section -----------------------------------------170
14.2. Disassembly Flowchart--------------------------------171
14.3. Disassembly Procedure------------------------------174

15 Measurements and Adjustments ------------------------199
15.1. Things to Do after Replacing IC-------------------- 199
15.2. Cordless Base Reference Drawing ----------------202
15.3. Handset Reference Drawing-------------------------203
15.4. Frequency Table -------------------------------------------204

16 Maintenance------------------------------------------------------205
16.1. Maintenance Items and Component Locations -205
16.2. Gear Section -----------------------------------------------207
16.3. Jams ----------------------------------------------------------- 214
16.4. Cleaning------------------------------------------------------215

17 Miscellaneous -----------------------------------------------------218
17.1. Terminal Guide of the ICs, Transistors and
Diodes ---------------------------------------------------- -218
17.2. How to Replace the Flat Package IC --------------221
17.3. Test Chart----------------------------------------------------223

18 Schematic Diagram ----------------------------------------------226
18.1. Digital Board (PCB1)------------------------------------226
18.2. Analog Board (PCB2) --------------------------------230
18.3. Operation Board (PCB3) / MIC Board (PCB9) --232
18.4. Power Supply Board (PCB4) -----------------------233
18.5. Interface Board (PCB5) -------------------------------234
18.6. Sensor Board (PCB6) ---------------------------------235
18.7. Film End Sensor Board (PCB6)--------------------235
18.8. Motor Position Sensor Board (PCB8) ------------- 235
18.9. Handset Board (PCB100) ----------------------------236

19 Printed Circuit Board-----------------------------------------239
19.1. Digital Board (PCB1)------------------------------------239
19.2. Analog Board (PCB2) ---------------------------------241
19.3. Operation Board (PCB3) / MIC Board (PCB9) --243
19.4. Power Supply Board (PCB4) -----------------------244
19.5. Interface Board (PCB5) -------------------------------- 245
19.6. Sensor Board (PCB6) -----------------------------------245
19.7. Film End Sensor Board (PCB7)--------------------245
19.8. Motor Position Sensor Board (PCB8) -------------245
19.9. Handset Board (PCB100) ----------------------------246

20 Appendix Information of Schematic Diagram ------- 248
20.1. For Schematic Diagram -------------------------------248
20.2. CPU Data -------------------------------------------------249
20.3. Explanation of RF unit Terminals (RF Unit) ------ 251

21 Exploded View and Replacement Parts List----------252
21.1. Cabinet, Mechanical and Electrical Parts
21.2. Replacement Parts List --------------------------------263

## 1 Safety Precautions

1. Before servicing, unplug the $A C$ power cord to prevent an electric shock.
2. When replacing parts, use only the manufacturer's recommended components.
3. Check the condition of the power cord. Replace if wear or damage is evident.
4. After servicing, be sure to restore the lead dress, insulation barriers, insulation papers, shields, etc.
5. Before returning the serviced equipment to the customer, be sure to perform the following insulation resistance test to prevent the customer from being exposed to shock hazards.

### 1.1. For Service Technicians

## ICs and LSIs are vulnerable to static electricity.

When repairing, the following precautions will help prevent recurring malfunctions.

1. Cover the plastic part's boxes with aluminum foil.
2. Ground the soldering irons.
3. Use a conductive mat on the worktable.
4. Do not touch the IC or LSI pins with bare fingers.

### 1.2. AC Caution

For safety, before closing the lower cabinet, please make sure of the following precautions.

1. The earth lead is fixed with the screw.
2. The AC lead is connected properly to power supply board.
3. Wrap the earth lead around the core 5 times.
4. Wrap the AC lead around the core 5 times.
(Bottom View)


### 1.3. Personal Safety Precautions

### 1.3.1. Moving Sections of the Unit

Be careful not to let your hair, clothes, fingers, accessories, etc., become caught in any moving sections of the unit.
The moving sections of the unit are the rollers and a gear. There is a separation roller and a document feed roller which are rotated by the document feed motor. A gear rotates the two rollers. Be careful not to touch them with your hands, especially when the unit is operating.


### 1.3.2. Live Electrical Sections

All the electrical sections of the unit supplied with AC power by the AC power cord are live.
Never disassemble the unit for service with the AC power supply plugged in.

## CAUTION:

AC voltage is supplied to the primary side of the power supply unit. Therefore, always unplug the AC power cord before disassembling for service.
(Bottom View)


### 1.4. Service Precautions

### 1.4.1. Precautions to Prevent Damage from Static Electricity

Electrical charges accumulate on a person. For instance, clothes rubbing together can damage electric elements or change their electrical characteristics. In order to prevent static electricity, touch a metallic part that is grounded to release the static electricity. Never touch the electrical sections such as the power supply unit, etc.


## 2 Warning

### 2.1. About Lead Free Solder (PbF: Pb free)

Note:
In the information below, Pb , the symbol for lead in the periodic table of elements, will refer to standard solder or solder that contains lead.

We will use PbF solder when discussing the lead free solder used in our manufacturing process which is made from Tin (Sn), Silver, (Ag), and Copper, (Cu).

This model, and others like it, manufactured using lead free solder will have PbF stamped on the PCB. For service and repair work we suggest using the same type of solder.

## Caution

- PbF solder has a melting point that is $50^{\circ} \sim 70^{\circ} \mathrm{F},\left(30^{\circ} \sim 40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$ higher than Pb solder. Please use a soldering iron with temperature control and adjust it to $700^{\circ} \pm 20^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$, $\left(370^{\circ} \pm 10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$.
- Exercise care while using higher temperature soldering irons.: Do not heat the PCB for too long time in order to prevent solder splash or damage to the PCB.
- PbF solder will tend to splash if it is heated much higher than its melting point, approximately $1100^{\circ} \mathrm{F},\left(600^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$.
- When applying PbF solder to double layered boards, please check the component side for excess which may flow onto the opposite side (See figure, below).



### 2.1.1. Suggested PbF Solder

There are several types of PbF solder available commercially. While this product is manufactured using Tin, Silver, and Copper, $(\mathrm{Sn}+\mathrm{Ag}+\mathrm{Cu})$, you can also use Tin and Copper, $(\mathrm{Sn}+\mathrm{Cu})$, or Tin, Zinc , and Bismuth, $(\mathrm{Sn}+\mathrm{Zn}+\mathrm{Bi})$. Please check the manufacturer's specific instructions for the melting points of their products and any precautions for using their product with other materials.
The following lead free $(\mathrm{PbF})$ solder wire sizes are recommended for service of this product: $0.3 \mathrm{~mm}, 0.6 \mathrm{~mm}$ and 1.0 mm .


### 2.2. Insulation Resistance Test

1. Unplug the power cord and short the two prongs of the plug with a jumper wire.
2. Turn on the power switch.
3. Measure the resistance value with an ohmmeter between the jumpered AC plug and each exposed metal cabinet part (screw heads, control shafts, bottom frame, etc.).
Note: Some exposed parts may be isolated from the chassis by design. These will read infinity.
4. If the measurement is outside the specified limits, there is a possibility of a shock hazard.


Resistance $=$ more than $5 \mathrm{M} \Omega$
(at DC 500 V )

### 2.3. Battery Caution

## CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's Instructions.

The lithium battery is a critical component (type No. CR2032). Please observe for the proper polarity and the exact location when replacing it and soldering the replacement lithium battery in.

## 3 Specifications

Any details given in these instructions are subject to change without notice.

### 3.1. Base Unit

Applicable Lines:
Document Size:
Effective Scanning Width:
Recording Paper Size:
Effective Printing Width:
Recording Paper Weight:
Transmission Speed
¹:
Scanning Density:

Photo Resolution:
Scanner Type:
Printer Type:
Data Compression System:
Modem Speed:
Operating Environment:
Frequency:
RF (Radio Frequency) Power Output Level
Dimensions:
Mass (Weight):
Power Consumption:

Power Supply:
Fax Memory Capacity*3:

Voice Memory Capacity*4:

Public Switched Telephone Network
Max. 216 mm in width, Max. 600 mm in length
208 mm
A4: $210 \mathrm{~mm} \times 297 \mathrm{~mm}$
A4: 202 mm
$60 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ to $90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$
Approx. $15 \mathrm{~s} /$ page* $^{* 2}$
Horizontal: 8 pels $/ \mathrm{mm}$
Vertical:
3.85 lines $/ \mathrm{mm}$ (standard resolution)
7.7 lines/mm (fine/photo resolution)
15.4 lines/mm (super fine resolution)

64 levels
Contact Image Sensor
Thermal Transfer on Plain Paper
Modified Huffman (MH), Modified READ (MR)
9,600 / 7,200 / 4,800 / 2,400 bps; Automatic Fallback
$5-35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 20-80 \% \mathrm{RH}$ (Relative Humidity)
$2.4 \mathrm{GHz}-2.48 \mathrm{GHz}$
$0.04 \mathrm{~W}-0.1 \mathrm{~W}$
Approx. height $106 \mathrm{~mm} \times$ width $374 \mathrm{~mm} \times$ depth 200 mm
Approx. 2.5 kg
Standby: Approx. 5.0 W
Transmission: Approx. 15 W
Reception: Approx. 40 W (When receiving a 20\% black document)
Copy: Approx. 40 W (When copying a $20 \%$ black document)
Maximum: Approx. 135 W (When copying a 100\% black document)
$220-240 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}, 50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$
Transmission: Approx. 25 pages
Reception: Approx. 28 pages
(Based on the ITU-T No. 1 Test Chart in standard resolution.)
Approx. 18 minutes of recording time including greeting messages
*1 Transmission speed depends on the contents of the pages, resolution, telephone line conditions and capability of the other party's machine.
*2 Transmission speed is based on the ITU-T No. 1 Test Chart with original mode. If the capability of the other party's machine is inferior to your unit, the transmission time may be longe. (Refer to ITU-T No. 1 Test Chart (P.223).)
*3 If an error occurs during fax reception, such as a paper jam or if the recording paper runs out, the fax and subsequent faxes will be retained in memory.
*4 Recording time may be reduced by the calling party's background noise.

### 3.2. Cordless Handset

| Operating Environment: | $5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Frequency: | $2.4 \mathrm{GHz}-2.48 \mathrm{GHz}$ |
| RF (Radio Frequency) Power Output Level: | $0.04 \mathrm{~W}-0.1 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| Dimensions: | Approx. height $167 \mathrm{~mm} \times$ width $48 \mathrm{~mm} \times$ depth 31 mm |
| Mass (Weight): | Approx. 107 g |
| Power Supply: | $\mathrm{Ni}-\mathrm{MH}$ battery $(2.4 \mathrm{~V}, 830 \mathrm{mAh})$ |
| Security codes: | 520,000 |

## 4 General/Introduction

### 4.1. Optional Accessories

| Model No. | Description | Specification |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| KX-FA52A, KX-FA52E | Replacement Film ${ }^{* 1}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 30 \mathrm{~m} \times 2 \text { rolls } \\ & \text { (Each roll will print about } 90 \text { A4 sized pages) } \end{aligned}$ |
| HHR-P105 | Battery | ------------------------ |
| KX-TCA89BX | Headset | Allows hands-free telephone conversations. |

*1 To ensure the unit operates properly, we recommend the use of a Panasonic replacement film. The ink film is not reusable. Do not rewind and use the ink film again.

## 5 Features

## General

- LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) readout


## Plain Paper Facsimile Machine

- 15 second transmission speed *
- A4, G3 compatible
- Automatic document feeder (up to 10 sheets)
- Quick scan
- Resolution: Standard/Fine/Super fine/Photo (64 level)
- Broadcast
- 20-sheet recording paper capacity
- Automatic fax/phone switching
* The 15 second speed is based upon the ITU-T No. 1 Test Chart on the condition that memory transmission is performed.


## Large Memory... Performed by DRAM

Approx. 28 pages of memory reception
Approx. 25 pages of memory transmission

## Integrated Telephone System

- On-hook dialing
- Digital duplex speakerphone
- Voice muting
- Redialing function
- The Base unit and cordless handset provide a phonebook (50 items each)
- Caller ID

The calling party's name or telephone number will be displayed after the 1st ring. You have the option of whether or not to answer the call.
The unit will automatically store caller information (name, telephone number, date and time of the call, the number of times called) from the 30 (base unit)/50 (cordless handset) most recent callers.
It is possible to view caller information one at a time on he display or print the entire Caller ID list.

## Enhanced Copier Function

- Multi-copy function (up to 20 copies)
- Enlargement and reduction
- Collate
-64-Level halftone

Digital Answering System

- Voice Time / Day Stamp
- 18-Minutes recording time


### 2.4 GHz Cordless

- Fax activation from handset
- 11 day battery life


## 6 Technical Descriptions

### 6.1. Connection Diagram



### 6.2. General Block Diagram

The following is an outline of each device IC on the digital board. (Refer to General Block Diagram (P.12).).

1. ASIC (IC501)

Composed mainly of an address decoder and a modem control.
Controls the general FAX operations
Controls the operation panel I/F
Controls the thermal head I/F and CIS I/F
Performs the image processing.
CPU and Real time clock
2. Flash ROM (IC502)

Contains all of the program instructions on the unit operations.
This memory is used mainly for the parameter working in the storage area.
3. Dynamic RAM (IC503)

This memory is used mainly for the parameter working in the storage area.
4. MODEM (IC701)

Performs the modulation and the demodulation for FAX communication.
5. Read Section

CIS image sensor to read transmitted documents.
6. Motor Driver (IC401)

Drives the transmission motor and the reception motor.
7. Thermal Head

Contains heat-emitting elements for dot matrix image printing
8. Analog Board

Composed of ITS circuit and NCU circuit.
9. Sensor Section

Composed of a cover open and film end switch, a document set switch, a document top switch, a paper top sensor.
10. Power Supply Board Switching Section

Supplies $+4 \mathrm{~V},+6 \mathrm{~V}$ and +24 V to the unit.
11. Flash Memory (IC504)

This memory is used for voice prompt.
6.2.1. General Block Diagram


REFERENCE:
Analog Board Block Diagram (P.41)
Cordless Base Block Diagram (P.56)

### 6.3. Control Section

### 6.3.1. Block Diagram



### 6.3.2. Memory Map



### 6.3.3. ASIC (IC501)

This custom IC is used for the general FAX operations.

1. CPU:

This model uses a Z80 equivalent to the CPU operating at 12 MHz . Most of the peripheral functions are performed by custom-designed LSIs. Therefore, the CPU only works for processing the results.
2. RTC:

Real Time Clock
3. DECODER

Decodes the address
4. ROM/RAM I/F:

Controls the SELECT signal of ROM or RAM and the bank switching.
5. CIS I/F:

Controls the document reading.
6. IMAGE DATA RAM:

This memory is programmed into the ASIC and uses 8 KB for the image processing. (See Fig. A.)
7. THERMAL HEAD I/F:

Transmits the recorded data to the thermal head.
8. MOTOR I/F:

Controls the transmission motor which feeds the document.
Controls the receiving motor which feeds the recording paper.
9. OPERATION PANEL I/F:

Serial interface with Operation Panel.
10. I/O PORT:

I/O Port Interface.
11. ANALOG UNIT:

Electronic volume for the handset and the monitor.
Sends beep tones, etc.


Fig. A
Note:
This memory is incorporated into the ASIC (IC501) and used for the image processing.
Fig. A shows the memory map of the Image Data RAM.

## Descriptions of Pin Distribution (IC501)

| NO. | SIGNAL | I/O | POWER SUPPLIED VOLTAGE | DESCRIPTION |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | VSSA |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (ANALOG GND) |
| 2 | VDDA 3.3 |  | 3.3 V | POWER SOURCE (ANALOG +3.3V) |
| 3 | AIN1 | A | 3.3 V | CCD IMAGE SIGNAL INPUT |
| 4 | AIN2 | A | 3.3 V | THERMISTOR TEMPERATURE WATCH INPUT |
| 5 | AIN3 | A | 3.3 V | --- |
| 6 | AMON | A | 3.3 V | ANALOG SIGNAL MONITOR TERMINAL |
| 7 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 8 | X32OUT | 0 | 3.3V/BATT | RTC (32.768KHz) CONNECTION |
| 9 | X32IN | 1 | 3.3V/BATT | RTC (32.768KHz) CONNECTION |
| 10 | VDD (3.3V / B) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V/LITHIUM BATTERY) |
| 11 | XBACEN | I | 3.3V/BATT | BACKUP ENABLE |
| 12 | XRAMCS | 0 | 3.3V/BATT | NOT USED |
| 13 | VDD (3.3V / B) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE(+3.3V / LITHIUM BATTERY) |
| 14 | VDD (2.5V/B) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+2.5V / LITHIUM BATTERY) |
| 15 | FTG | 0 | 3.3 V | SH SIGNAL OUTPUT FOR CIS (SI) |
| 16 | F1 | 0 | 3.3 V | 01 SIGNAL OUTPUT FOR CIS (CLK) |
| 17 | F2/OP | 0 | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (THON) |
| 18 | FR/OP | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (MDMRST) |
| 19 | CPC/IP | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (BELL) |
| 20 | RVN | 1 | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (REED) |
| 21 | IRDATXD/IOP81 | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (BELL-TX) |
| 22 | IRDARXD/IOP80 | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (CSI) |
| 23 | TXD/IOP30 | 0 | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (TXD) |
| 24 | RXD/IOP31 | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (RXD) |
| 25 | XRTS/IOP32 | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (COVER OPEN) |
| 26 | XCTS/IOP33 | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (FILM CHECK) |
| 27 | VDD (2.5V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+2.5V) |
| 28 | TONE1 | A | 3.3 V | TONE OUTPUT |
| 29 | TONE2 | A | 3.3 V | TONE OUTPUT |
| 30 | VOLUREF | A | 3.3 V | ANALOG REF VOLTAGE |
| 31 | VOLUOUT | A | 3.3 V | VOLUME OUTPUT |
| 32 | VOLUIN | A | 3.3 V | VOLUME INPUT |
| 33 | XNMI | 1 | 3.3 V | HIGH FIXED |
| 34 | FMEMDO/IOP26/CBUSY2 | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (CBUSY2) |
| 35 | VDD (3.3V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V) |
| 36 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 37 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 38 | VDD (3.3V) |  | --- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V) |
| 39 | MIDAT/IOP45 | I/O | 3.3 V | INPUT / OUTPUT PORT (OPRESET) |
| 40 | MICLK/IOP46 | I/O | 3.3 V | INPUT / OUTPUT PORT (INTERCOM) |
| 41 | MILAT/IOP47 | I/O | 3.3 V | INPUT / OUTPUT PORT (XINTERCOM) |
| 42 | 20KOSC/IOP56/CSO | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (CSO) |
| 43 | XWAIT/IOP60 | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (PTOP) |
| 44 | HSTRD/IOP40 | 0 | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (LINERLY) |
| 45 | HSTWR/IOP41 | I/O | 3.3 V | INPUT/OUTPUT PORT (SPMUTE) |
| 46 | XOPRBE/MFCS | O | 3.3 V | MFCS |
| 47 | ADR15/OP | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 15 (NOT USED) |
| 48 | ADR14/OP | 0 | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 14 (NOT USED) |
| 49 | ADR13/OP | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 13 (NOT USED) |
| 50 | VDD (2.5V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+2.5V) |
| 51 | XOUT | O | 3.3 V | SYSTEM CLOCK (24.00MHz) |
| 52 | XIN | I | 3.3 V | SYSTEM CLOCK (24.00MHz) |
| 53 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 54 | VDD (3.3V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V) |
| 55 | XTEST | O | 3.3 V | 24.576MHz CLOCK |
| 56 | TEST1 | I | 3.3 V | HIGH FIXED |


| NO. | SIGNAL | I/O | POWER SUPPLIED VOLTAGE | DESCRIPTION |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 57 | TEST2 | I | 3.3 V | HIGH FIXED |
| 58 | TEST3 | 1 | 3.3 V | HIGH FIXED |
| 59 | TEST4 | I | 3.3 V | HIGH FIXED |
| 60 | XMDMINT | 1 | 3.3 V | MODEM INTERRUPT |
| 61 | XMDMCS | 0 | 3.3 V | MODEM CHIP SELECT |
| 62 | XRAS/IOP42 | 0 | 3.3 V | DRAM (IC503) ROW ADDRESS STROBE |
| 63 | XCAS1/IOP/43 | 0 | 3.3 V | DRAM (IC503) CULUM ADDRESS STROBE |
| 64 | XCAS2/IOP44 | 0 | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT (CIS ON) |
| 65 | XRESCS2/OP71 | 0 | 3.3 V | IC504 CHIP SELECT |
| 66 | DB3 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 3 |
| 67 | DB2 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 2 |
| 68 | DB4 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 4 |
| 69 | DB1 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 1 |
| 70 | DB5 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 5 |
| 71 | VDD (3.3V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V) |
| 72 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 73 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 74 | VDD (3.3V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V) |
| 75 | DB0 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 0 |
| 76 | DB6 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 6 |
| 77 | DB7 | I/O | 3.3 V | CPU DATA BUS 7 |
| 78 | XROMCS | 0 | 3.3 V | ROM (IC502) CHIP SELECT |
| 79 | RD | 0 | 3.3 V | CPU RD |
| 80 | WR | 0 | 3.3 V | CPU WR |
| 81 | ADR0 | 0 | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 0 |
| 82 | ADR1 | 0 | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 1 |
| 83 | ADR2 | 0 | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 2 |
| 84 | ADR3 | 0 | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 3 |
| 85 | ADR4 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 4 |
| 86 | ADR5 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 5 |
| 87 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 88 | VDD (2.5V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+2.5V) |
| 89 | ADR6 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 6 |
| 90 | ADR7 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 7 |
| 91 | ADR8 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS BUS 8 |
| 92 | ADR9 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS 9 |
| 93 | ADR10 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS 10 |
| 94 | ADR11 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS 11 |
| 95 | ADR12 | O | 3.3 V | CPU ADDRESS 12 |
| 96 | RBA0 | O | 3.3 V | ROM/RAM BANK ADDRESS 0 |
| 97 | RBA1 | O | 3.3 V | ROM/RAM BANK ADDRESS 1 |
| 98 | RBA2 | O | 3.3 V | ROM/RAM BANK ADDRESS 2 |
| 99 | RBA3 | O | 3.3 V | ROM/RAM BANK ADDRESS 3 |
| 100 | RBA4 | O | 3.3 V | ROM/RAM BANK ADDRESS 4 |
| 101 | RBA5/OP | O | 3.3 V | ROM/RAM BANK ADDRESS 5 |
| 102 | RBA6/IOP96 | O | 3.3 V | A19 |
| 103 | STB1 | O | 3.3 V | STROBE SIGNAL OUTPUT TO THERMAL HEAD |
| 104 | STB2 | O | 3.3 V | STROBE SIGNAL OUTPUT TO THERMAL HEAD |
| 105 | STB3 | O | 3.3 V | NOT USED |
| 106 | XRESET | I | 3.3 V | RESET INPUT |
| 107 | VDD (3.3V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V) |
| 108 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 109 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 110 | VDD (3.3V) |  | -- | POWER SOURCE (+3.3V) |
| 111 | XORESET | O | 3.3 V | RESET OUTPUT |
| 112 | VDD(5V) |  | ----- | POWER SOURCE (+5V) |
| 113 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |


| NO. | SIGNAL | I/O | POWER SUPPLIED VOLTAGE | DESCRIPTION |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 114 | XRESETI | I | 3.3 V | RESET INPUT |
| 115 | WDERR | O | 3.3 V | WATCHED ERROR OUTPUT SIGNAL |
| 116 | THDAT | O | 3.3 V | RECORDED IMAGE OUTPUT |
| 117 | THCLK | 0 | 3.3 V | CLOCK OUTPUT FOR DATA TRANSFER |
| 118 | THLAT | O | 3.3 V | PULSE OUTPUT FOR DATA LATCH |
| 119 | STBNP | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (CHARGE) |
| 120 | RM0/IOP00 | O | 3.3 V | MOTOR A PHASE |
| 121 | RM1/IOP01 | O | 3.3 V | MOTOR B PHASE |
| 122 | RM2/IOP02 | 0 | 3.3 V | MOTOR /A PHASE |
| 123 | RM3/IOP03 | O | 3.3 V | MOTOR /B PHASE |
| 124 | RXE/IP04 | 0 | 3.3 V | MOTOR ENABLE SIGNAL |
| 125 | TMO/IOP10 | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT(CRESET) |
| 126 | VDD (2.5V) |  | -- | POWER SOURCE (+2.5V) |
| 127 | VSS |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (GND) |
| 128 | TM1/IOP11 | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT(S-ENB) |
| 129 | TM2/IOP12 | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT(TELRXEN) |
| 130 | TM3/IOP13 | O | 3.3 V | OUTPUT PORT(TONE2EN) |
| 131 | TXE/IP14 | 1 | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT(MOTOR-PS) |
| 132 | KSTART | O | 3.3 V | OPERATION PANEL CONTROL |
| 133 | KLATCH | O | 3.3 V | OPERATION PANEL CONTROL |
| 134 | KSCLK | O | 3.3 V | OPERATION PANEL CONTROL |
| 135 | KTXD | O | 3.3 V | OPERATION PANEL CONTROL |
| 136 | KRXD | I | 3.3 V | OPERATION PANEL CONTROL |
| 137 | FMEMCLK/IOP24/CCLK | I | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (CCLK) |
| 138 | FMEMDI/IOP25/CBUSY1 | 1 | 3.3 V | INPUT PORT (CBUSY1) |
| 139 | ADSEL1 | O | 3.3 V | CHANNEL SELECT SIGNAL FOR AIN2 |
| 140 | VDDA (2.5V) |  | 2.5 V | POWER SOURCE (ANALOG +2.5V) |
| 141 | VREFB | A | 3.3 V | A/D CONVERTER'S ZERO STANDARD VOLTAGE OUTPUT |
| 142 | VCL | A | 3.3 V | ANALOG PART STANDARD VOLTAGE SIGNAL |
| 143 | VREFT | A | 3.3 V | A/D CONVERTER'S FULL SCALE VOLTAGE OUTPUT |
| 144 | VSSA |  | GND | POWER SOURCE (ANALOG GND) |

### 6.3.4. Flash ROM (IC502)

The 512KB ROM (FLASH ROM) carries a common area of 32KB and bank areas which each have 8KB (BK4~BK63). The addresses from 0000 H to 7 FFFH are for the common area and from 8000 H to 9 FFFH are for the bank areas.

### 6.3.5. Dynamic RAM (IC503)

The DRAM serves as CPU and receives memory.
The address is F200H~F3FFH (DRAM access window 1) and F600H~F7FFH (DRAM access window 2).

### 6.3.6. Reset Circuit (Watch dog timer)

The output signal (reset) from pin 2 of the voltage detect IC (IC505) is input to the ASIC (IC501) 114 pin.
Circuit Diagram


1. During a momentary power interruption, a reset pulse of 60 msec is generated and the system is reset completely.

2. The watch dog timer, built-in the ASIC (IC501), is initialized by the CPU about every 1.5 ms .

When a watch dog error occurs, pin 115 of the ASIC (IC501) becomes low level.
The terminal of the 'WDERR' signal is connected to the reset line, so the 'WDERR' signal works as the reset signal.

### 6.3.7. RTC Backup Circuit

## 1. Function

This unit has a lithium battery (BAT151 on Analog Board) which works for Real Time Clock IC (RTC: inside IC501).
The RTC continues to work, backed up by a lithium battery even when the power switch is OFF.
The user parameters for autodial numbers, the system setup data and others are in the FLASH MEMORY (IC502).

## 2. RTC Inside (IC501) Backup Circuit Operation

When the power switch is turned ON, power is supplied through Q502 to the RTC (inside IC501). At this time, the voltage at pin 14 of the IC501 is +2.5 V . When the power switch is turned OFF, the BAT151 supplies power to RTC through D151 and Q502. The voltage at pin 14 of IC501 is about +2.2 V . When the power switch is OFF and the voltage of +3.3 V decreases, pin 14 of RTC (IC501) becomes roughly the same voltage as the battery voltage. RTC goes into the backup mode, in which the power consumption is lower.

Circuit Diagram


### 6.3.8. Supervision Circuit for the Thermal Head Temperature

## 1. Function

The thermistor changes the resistor according to the temperature and uses the thermistor's characteristics. The output of pin 139 of IC501 becomes a low level. Then when it becomes a high level, it triggers point A In point C, according to the voltage output time, the thermal head's temperature is detected.
After the thermal head temperature is converted to voltage in $B$, it is then changed to digital data in the $A / D$ converter inside IC501. The CPU decides the strobe width of the thermal head according to this value. Therefore, this circuit can keep the thermal head at an even temperature in order to stabilize the printing density and prevent the head from being overheated.

Circuit Diagram


Timing Chart


Trigger
(B)

(C)


REFERENCE:
Thermal Head (P.24)

### 6.4. Facsimile Section

### 6.4.1. Image Data Flow during facsimile Operation

## Copy (Fine, Super-Fine, Half Tone)

1. Line information is read by CIS (to be used as the reference white level) via route1, and is input to IC501. Refer to Block Diagram (P.23)
2. In IC501, the data is adjusted to a suitable level for A/D conversion in the Analog Signal Processing Section, and via route2 it is input to A/D conversion (8 bit). After finishing A/D conversion, the data is input to the Image Processing Section via route3. Then via route 4 and route5, it is stored in RAM as shading data.
3. The draft's information that is read by CIS is input to IC501 via route1. After it is adjusted to a suitable level for A/D conversion via route2, the draft's information is converted to A/D (8 bit), and it is input to the Image Processing Section. The other side, the shading data which flows from RAM via route6 and route7, is input to the Image Processing Section. After finishing the draft's information image processing, white is regarded as " 0 " and black is regarded as "1". Then via routes 4 and 5 , they are stored in RAM.
4. The white/black data stored as above via routes6 and 8 is input to the $P / S$ converter. The white/black data converted to serial data in the P/S converter is input to the Thermal Head via route9 and is printed out on recording paper.

## Note:

Standard : Reads 3.85 times $/ \mathrm{mm}$
Fine : Reads 7.7 times $/ \mathrm{mm}$
Super-Fine : Reads 15.4 times $/ \mathrm{mm}$

## Transmission

1. Same processing as Copy items 1-3.
2. The data stored in the RAM of IC501 is output from IC501 via routes6 and 10, and is stored in the system bus. Via route11, it is stored in the communication buffer inside DRAM (IC503).
3. While retrieving data stored in the communication buffer synchronous with the modem, the CPU (inside IC501) inputs the data to the modem along route12, where it is converted to serial analog data and forwarded over the telephone lines via the NCU Section.

## Reception

1. The serial analog image data is received over the telephone lines and input to the modem via the NCU section, where it is demodulated to parallel digital data. Then the CPU (IC501) stores the data in the communication buffer DRAM (IC503) along route12.
2. The data stored in DRAM (IC503) is decoded by the CPU (IC501) via route12, and is stored in DRAM (IC503) via routes13 and 5.
3. Same processing as Copy item 4.

### 6.4.2. Block Diagram



TEL. LINE

### 6.4.3. Thermal Head

## 1. Function

This unit utilizes the state of the art thermal printer technology.
The ink film is chemically processed. The ink film is comprised of two parts: an ink layer and a base film. When the thermal head contacts this ink film, it emits heat momentarily, and the ink layer is melted and transferred to the paper. If this continues, letters and/or diagrams appear, and the original document is reproduced.

## Composition of the receive record section (Thermal recording format)



## 2. Circuit Operation

Refer to the block diagram and the timing chart on the following page.
There are 9 driver ICs aligned horizontally on the thermal head and each one of these ICs can drive 192 heat-emitting registers. This means that one line is at a density of $192 \times 9=1728$ dots $=(8$ dots $/ \mathrm{mm})$.
White/Black (white=0, black=1) data in one line increment is synchronized at IC501 pin 117 (THCLK) , and sent from IC501 pin 116 (THDAT) to the shift register of the ICs. The shift registers of the 9 ICs are connected in series, and upon the shift of the 1728 dot increment, the shift register becomes filled with data, and a latch pulse is emitted to each IC from IC501 pin 118 (THLAT).
With this latch pulse, all the contents of the shift registers are latched to the latch registers. Thereafter, through the addition of strobes from the IC501 pins $(103,104)$, only the dot location of black ( $=1$ ) among latched data activates the driver, and the current passes to heat the emitting body to cause heat emission.
Here, the two line strobes, STB1 and STB2, impress at intervals of 9.216 msec , as required for one-line printout.
The sequence is shown on the next page. [Moreover, for the strobe width, the thermistor value inside the thermal head is detected according to IC501 pin 4. Depending on that value, the strobe width is recorded in FLASH ROM (IC502). Accordingly, the strobe width is determined.]
When the thermal head is not used, the IC501 (17, THON) becomes low, Q603 turns OFF, Q401 turns OFF, and the +24 V power supply for the thermal head driver is not impressed to protect the IC.

## Circuit Diagram



Timing Chart


### 6.4.4. Scanning Block

The scanning block of this device consists of a control circuit and a contact image sensor made up of a celfoc lens array, an LED array, and photoelectric conversion elements.

Circuit Diagram


When an original document is inserted and the start button pressed, pin 64 of IC501 goes to a low level and Q601 are turned ON, pin 110 of IC701 goes to a high level and the transistor Q602 turns on. This applies voltage to the LED array to light it. The contact image sensor is driven by each of the FTG-F1 signals output from IC501, and the original image illuminated by the LED array undergoes photoelectric conversion to output an analog image signal (SIG). The analog image signal is input to the system ASIC on AIN1 (pin 3 of IC501) and converted into 8-bit data by the A/D converter inside IC501. Then this signal undergoes digital processing in order to obtain a high-quality image.

### 6.4.5. Stepping Motor Drive Circuit

## 1. Function

The stepping motor works for both transmission and reception.
2. Motor

During motor driving, pin 124 of ASIC IC501 becomes a high level, and Q403, Q402 turns ON. As a result, +24 V is supplied to the motor coil.
Stepping pulses are output from ASIC IC501 pins, 120~123, causing driver IC401 pins, 11~14 to drive the Motor Coil. The motor coil is energized sequentially in 2 phase increments, which causes a 1 -step rotation. A 1-step rotation feeds 0.13 mm of recording paper.
The timing chart is below.

## Stepping Monitor Timing Chart



Stepping Motor Drive Mode

| Function | Mode | Phase Pattern | Speed |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Copy | Fine, Photo | $1-2$ | $432 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 432)$ |
|  | Super Fine | $1-2$ | $216 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 216)$ |
|  | Standard | $2-2$ | $432 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 432)$ |
|  | Fine, Photo | $1-2$ | $432 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 432)$ |
|  | Super Fine | $1-2$ | $216 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 216)$ |
| FAX Receiving | Standard, Fine, Photo | $1-2$ | $432 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 432)$ |
|  | Super Fine | $1-2$ | $216 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 216)$ |
|  | - | $1-2$ | $432 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 432)$ |
| Document Feed | - | $1-2$ | $432 \mathrm{pps}(\mathrm{t}=1 / 432)$ |
| Stand-by | - | All phases are currently off. | None |

## Circuit Diagram



When the motor suspends while it is in the receive mode (about $70 \sim 80 \mathrm{msec}$ ), pin 124 of ASIC IC501 becomes a low level and Q403 turns OFF. Then Q402 also turns OFF, and instead of $+24 \mathrm{~V},+6 \mathrm{~V}$ is supplied through D401 so that the motor is held in place. When the system is in the stand-by mode, all of the motor drive transistors turn OFF. Consequently, the motor current stops.

### 6.5. Sensors and Switches

All of the sensor and switches are shown below.

| Sensor Circuit Location | Sensor | Sensor or Switch Name | Error Message |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Operation Panel | SW351 | Document top sensor | [REMOVE DOCUMENT] |
|  | SW352 | Document set sensor | [CHECK DOCUMENT] |
|  | SW1001 | Cover Open sensor <br> Paper Top sensor | [CHECK COVER] <br> [PAPER JAMMED] |
| Film End Sensor P.C.Board | SW1002 | Film Detection sensor | [FILM EMPTY] |
| Gear Block | SW1003 | Film End sensor | [CHECK FILM] |

Note:
See Test Mode (P.77). (\#815: Sensor Check)

Sensor Locations


### 6.5.1. Document Top Sensor (SW351)

When a document is brought to the read position, the SW turns ON, and the input signal of IC301-6 pin (Operation Board) becomes a low level. When there is no document at the read position, the SW turns OFF, and the input signal of IC301-6 pin (Operation Board) becomes a high level.


|  | SW | Signal (IC301-6 pin) |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Out of the Read Position | OFF | High level |
| At the Read Position | ON | Low level |

### 6.5.2. Document Set Sensor (SW352)

When a document is set, the SW turns ON, and the input signal of IC301-9 pin (Operation Board) becomes a low level. When there is no document, the SW turns ON, and the input signal of IC301-9 pin (Operation Board) becomes a high level.


|  | SW | Signal (IC301-9 pin) |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| No document | OFF | High level |
| Set document | ON | Low level |

### 6.5.3. Paper Top Sensor (SW1001)

When the recording paper is loaded on the print head or the recording paper cover is opened, the paper top sensor SW turns ON, and the input signal of IC501-43 pin (Digital Board) becomes a low level. Usually, the SW turns OFF, and the input signal of IC50143 pin (Digital Board) becomes a high level.


|  | SW | Signal (IC501-43 pin) |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Set recording paper or paper cover is opened | ON | Low level |
| No recording paper or paper cover is closed | OFF | High level |

### 6.5.4. Cover Open Sensor (SW1001)

When the u-TURN BLOCK is closed, the SW becomes ON, and the input signal of IC501-25 pin (Digital Board) becomes a low level.
When the cover is opened, the SW becomes OFF, and the input signal of IC501-25 (Digital Board) pin becomes a high level.


|  | SW | Signal (IC501-25 pin) |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Cover is opened | OFF | High level |
| Cover is closed | ON | Low level |

## KX-FG2452CX

### 6.5.5. Film End Sensor (SW1003)

When the operation panel cover is closed and a film is set, the SW turns ON, and the input signal of IC501-26 pin (Digital Board) becomes a low level. When the cover is opened, the SW turns OFF, and the input signal of IC501-26 pin (Digital Board) becomes a high level.


|  | SW | Signal (IC501-26 pin) |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| No film | OFF | High level |
| Set a film | ON | Low level |

### 6.5.6. Motor Position Sensor (SW1004)

When the recording paper is loaded on the print head, the SW turns ON, and the input signal of IC501-131 pin (Digital Board) becomes a low level. When the recording paper is not loaded on the print head, the SW turns OFF, and the input signal of IC501131 pin (Digital Board) becomes a high level.


|  | SW | Signal (IC501-131 pin) |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Home position | ON | Low level |
| Other | OFF | High level |

### 6.6. Modem Section

### 6.6.1. Function

The unit uses a 1 chip modem (IC701) that serves as an interface between the control section for FAX transmission and reception and the telephone line. During a transmitting operation, the digital image signals are modulated and sent to the telephone line.
During a receiving operation, the analog image signals which are received via the telephone line are demodulated and converted into digital image signals. The communication format and procedures for FAX communication are standardized by ITU-T. This 1 chip modem (IC701) has hardware which sends and detects all of the necessary signals for FAX communication. It can be controlled by writing commands from the CPU (IC501: inside ASIC) to the register in the modem (IC505). This modem (IC701) also sends DTMF signals, generates a call tone (from the speaker), and detects a busy tone and dial tones.

Overview of Facsimile Communication Procedures (ITU-T Recommendation):

1. ON CCITT (International Telegraph and Telephone Consultative Committee)

The No. XIV Group of ITU-T, one of the four permanent organizations of the International Telecommunications Union (ITU), investigates and make recommendations on international standards for facsimiles.

## 2. Definition of Each Group

- Group I (G1)

Official A-4 size documents without using formats which reduce the band width of a signal are sent over telephone lines.Determined in 1968
Transmission for about 6 minutes at a scanning line density of 3.85 lines $/ \mathrm{mm}$.

- Group II (G2)

Using reduction technology in the modulation/demodulation format, an A-4 size document is sent at an official scanning line density of 3.85 lines $/ \mathrm{mm}$ for about 3 minutes.
Methods to suppress redundancy are not used.
Determined in 1976.

- Group III (G3)

Method of suppressing redundancy in the image signal prior to modulation is used. An A-4 size document is sent within about one minute.
Determined in 1980.

- Group IV (G4)

Transmission is via the data network. A method is provided for suppressing redundancy in signals prior to transmission, and error-free reception of transmission is possible.
The scope of these facsimile applications is not limited simply to transmission of written statements. Through symbiotic linkages with other communication methods, it can be expected to expand to include integrated services.

## 3. Facsimile Call Time Series

As shown in the following diagram, the facsimile call time series is divided into five phases.


Phase A: Call setting
Call setting can be manual/automatic.
Phase B: Pre-message procedure
Phase B is a pre-processing procedure and sequence for confirming the status of the terminal, transmission route, etc., and for terminal control. It implements terminal preparation status, determines and displays terminal constants, confirms synchronization status, etc. and prepares for transmission of facsimile messages.
Phase C: Message transmission
Phase $C$ is the procedure for the transmitting facsimile messages.
Phase D: Post message procedure
Phase D is the procedure for confirming that the message is completed and received. For continuous transmission, phase B or phase $C$ is repeated for transmission.
Phase E: Call retrieval
Phase E is the procedure for call retrieval, that is for circuit disconnection.

## 4. Concerning Transmission Time

```
Transmission Time = Control Time + Image Transmission Time + Hold Time
```

Transmission time consists of the following.

## Control time:

This is time at the start of transmission when the functions at the sending and receiving sides are confirmed, the transmission mode is established, and transmission and reception are synchronized.

## Image transmission time:

This is the time required for the transmission of document contents (image data). In general, this time is recorded in the catalog, etc.
Hold time:
This is the time required after the document contents have been sent to confirm that the document was actually sent, and to check for telephone reservations and/or the existence of continuous transmission.

## 5. Facsimile Standards

| Item | Telephone Network Facsimile |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | G3 Machine |
| Connection Control Mode | Telephone Network Signal Mode |
| Terminal Control Mode | T. 30 Binary |
| Facsimile Signal Format | Digital |
| Modulation Mode | PSK (V. 27 ter) or QAM (V. 29) |
| Transmission Speed | 300 bps (Control Signal) <br> $2400,4800,7200,9600$ bps (FAX Signal) |
| Redundancy Compression <br> Process <br> (Coding Mode) | 1 dimension : MH Mode <br> 2 dimension : MR Mode (K=2.4) |
| Resolution | Main Scan : 8 pel/mm <br> Sub Scan : 3.85, 7.7l/mm |
| Line Synchronization Signal | EOL Signal |
| 1 Line Transmission Time <br> [ms/line] | Depends on the degree of data reduction. <br> Minimum Value : 10, 20 <br> Can be recognized in 40ms. |

## 6. Explanation of Communication and Compression Technology

## a. G3 Communication Signals (T. 30 Binary Process)

For G3 Facsimile communication, this is the procedure for exchanging control signals between the sending and receiving machines both before and after transmission of image signals.
Control signals at 300 bps FSK are: $1850 \mathrm{~Hz} . .0,1650 \mathrm{~Hz} . .1$.
An example of a binary process in G3 communication is shown below.
Transmitter Side Receiver Side

| Phase A | Document set Dial |  | Bell Detection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | FAX SW | CED | Notifies the capacity of the receiving unit (e.g. recording paper width, transmission speed). |
| Phase B | Checks the performance of the sending machine (document width, transmission speed, etc.), and sets the communication mode. |  | Checks the receiving preparations and line condition. |
| , |  | CFR | Receiving preparations OK |
|  | Transmission Start | Training 2 | Record Start |
| Phase C |  |  | Record Stop |
|  | Transmission End | $\frac{\text { EOP }}{\text { MCF }}$ | Reception OK |
|  | Disconnect Information Disconnect | DCN | Disconnect |

## Explanation of Signals

Control signals are comprised mainly of 8-bit identification signals and the data signals added to them. Data signals are added to DIS and DCS signals.
Signal.....DIS (Digital Identification Signal)
Identification Signal Format..... 00000001

## Function:

Notifies the capacity of the receiving unit. The added data signals are as follows.

Signal.....DCS (Digital Command Signal)
Identification Signal Format.....X1000001
Example (Some models do not support the following items.):

| Bit No. | DIS/DTC |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Transmitter --- T.2 operation | DCS |
| 2 | Receiver --- T.2 operation | Receiver --- T.2 operation |
| 3 | T.2 IOC = 176 | T.2 IOC $=176$ |
| 4 | Transmitter --- T.3 operation |  |
| 5 | Receiver --- T.3 operation | Receiver --- T.3 operation |
| 6 | V.8 features | Invalid |
| 7 | Reserved for future T.3 operation features. | Invalid |
| 8 | Reserved for future T.3 operation features. |  |
| 9 | Transmitter --- T.4 operation |  |
| 10 | Receiver --- T.4 operation | Receiver --- T.4 operation |

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline Bit No. \& DIS/DTC \& DCS \\
\hline \(11,12,13,14\)
\(0,0,0,0\)
\(0,1,0,0\)
\(1,0,0,0\)
\(1,1,0,0\)
\(0,0,1,0\)
\(0,1,1,0\)
\(1,0,1,0\)
\(1,1,1,0\)
\(0,0,0,1\)
\(0,1,0,1\)
\(1,0,0,1\)
\(1,1,0,1\)
\(0,0,1,1\)
\(0,1,1,1\)
\(1,0,1,1\)
\(1,1,1,1\) \& \begin{tabular}{l}
Data signaling rate \\
V. 27 ter fall back mode \\
V. 27 ter \\
V. 29 \\
V. 27 ter and V. 29 \\
Not used \\
Reserved \\
Not used \\
Invalid \\
Not used \\
Reserved \\
Not used \\
V. 27 ter and V. 29 and V. 17 \\
Not used \\
Reserved \\
Not used \\
Reserved
\end{tabular} \& Data signaling rate 2400 bit/s, V. 27 ter 4800 bit/s, V. 27 ter 9600 bit/s, V. 29 7200 bit/s, V. 29 14400 bit/s, V. 33 12000 bit/s, V. 33 Reserved Reserved 14400 bit/s, V. 17 12000 bit/s, V. 17 9600 bit/s, V. 17 7200 bit/s, V. 17 Reserved Reserved Reserved Reserved \\
\hline 15 \& R8×7.7 lines/mm and/or \(200 \times 200\) pels/25.4mm \& R8×7.7 lines/mm and/or \(200 \times 200\) pels/25.4mm \\
\hline 16 \& Two-dimensional coding capability \& Two-dimensional coding capability \\
\hline \[
\begin{aligned}
\& \hline 17,18 \\
\& (0,0) \\
\& (0,1) \\
\& (1,0) \\
\& (1,1)
\end{aligned}
\] \& \begin{tabular}{l}
Recording width capabilities \\
1728 picture elements along scan line length of
\[
215 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%
\] \\
1728 picture elements along scan line length of
\[
215 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%
\] \\
2048 picture elements along scan line length of \(255 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%\) \\
2432 picture elements along scan line length of \(303 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%\) \\
1728 picture elements along scan line length of \(215 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%\) \\
2048 picture elements along scan line length of \(255 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%\) \\
Invalid
\end{tabular} \& \begin{tabular}{l}
Recording width \\
1728 picture elements along scan line length of
\[
215 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%
\] \\
2432 picture elements along scan line length of
\[
303 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%
\] \\
2048 picture elements along scan line length of \(255 \mathrm{~mm} \pm 1 \%\) \\
Invalid
\end{tabular} \\
\hline \[
\begin{aligned}
\& \hline 19,20 \\
\& (0,0) \\
\& (0,1) \\
\& (1,0) \\
\& (1,1)
\end{aligned}
\] \& \begin{tabular}{l}
Maximum recording length capability A4 ( 297 mm ) \\
Unlimited A4 \((297 \mathrm{~mm})\) and B4 ( 364 mm ) Invalid
\end{tabular} \& Maximum recording length A4 (297 mm) Unlimited B4 (364 mm) Invalid \\
\hline \[
\begin{gathered}
21,22,23 \\
(0,0,0) \\
(0,0,1) \\
(0,1,0) \\
(1,0,0) \\
(0,1,1) \\
(1,1,0) \\
(1,0,1) \\
(1,1,1)
\end{gathered}
\] \& \begin{tabular}{rl} 
Minimum scan line time capability of the receiver \\
20 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=\mathrm{T}_{3.85}\) \\
40 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=\mathrm{T}_{3.85}\) \\
10 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=\mathrm{T}_{3.85}\) \\
5 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=\mathrm{T}_{3.85}\) \\
10 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=1 / 2 \mathrm{~T}_{3.85}\) \\
20 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=1 / 2 \mathrm{~T}_{3.85}\) \\
40 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=1 / 2 \mathrm{~T}_{3.85}\) \\
0 ms at \(3.85 \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{mm}: \mathrm{T}_{7.7}\) \& \(=\mathrm{T}_{3.85}\)
\end{tabular} \& Minimum scan line time
20 ms
40 ms
10 ms
5 ms

0 ms <br>
\hline 24 \& Extend field \& Extend field <br>
\hline 25 \& Reserved \& 2400 bit/s handshaking <br>
\hline 26 \& Uncompressed mode \& Uncompressed mode <br>
\hline 27 \& Error correction mode \& Error correction mode <br>
\hline 28 \& Set to "0". \& Frame size 0 = 256 octets 1 = 64 octets <br>
\hline 29 \& Reserved \& Reserved <br>
\hline 30 \& Reserved \& Reserved <br>
\hline 31 \& T. 6 coding capability \& T. 6 coding enabled <br>
\hline 32 \& Extend field \& Extend field <br>

\hline \[
$$
\begin{aligned}
& \hline 33 \\
& (0) \\
& (1)
\end{aligned}
$$

\] \& Validity of bits 17, 18 Bits 17,18 are valid Bits 17, 18 are invalid \& | Recording width |
| :--- |
| Recording width indicated by bits 17, 18 |
| Recording width indicated by this field bit information | <br>

\hline 34 \& Recording width capability 1216 picture elements along scan line length of $151 \pm \mathrm{mm} 1 \%$ \& Middle 1216 elements of 1728 picture elements <br>
\hline 35 \& Recording width capability 864 picture elements along scan line length of $107 \pm$ mm 1\% \& Middle 864 elements of 1728 picture elements <br>
\hline 36 \& Recording width capability 1728 picture elements along scan line length of $151 \pm \mathrm{mm} 1 \%$ \& Invalid <br>
\hline 37 \& Recording width capability 1728 picture elements along scan line length of $107 \pm \mathrm{mm} 1 \%$ \& Invalid <br>
\hline 38 \& Reserved \& <br>
\hline 39 \& Reserved \& <br>
\hline
\end{tabular}

| Bit No. | DIS/DTC | DCS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 40 | Extend field | Extend field |
| 41 | R8×15.4 lines/mm | R8×15.4 lines/mm |
| 42 | $300 \times 300$ pels/25.4 mm | $300 \times 300 \mathrm{pels} / 25.4 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| 43 | R16×15.4 lines/mm and/or $400 \times 400$ pels/25.4 mm | R16 $\times 15.4$ lines $/ \mathrm{mm}$ and/or $400 \times 400$ pels/ 25.4 mm |
| 44 | Inch based resolution preferred | Resolution type selection "0" : neuritic based resolution "1" : inch based resolution |
| 45 | Metric based resolution preferred | Don't care |
| 46 | Minimum scan line time capability for higher resolutions "0" : $\mathrm{T}_{15.4}=\mathrm{T}_{7.7} \quad$ "1" : $\mathrm{T}_{15.4}=1 / 2 \mathrm{~T}_{7.7}$ | Don't care |
| 47 | Selective Polling capability | Set to "0". |
| 48 | Extend field | Extend field |

Note 1 - Standard facsimile units conforming to T. 2 must have the following capability : Index of cooperation (IOC)=264.
Note 2 - Standard facsimile units conforming to T. 3 must have the following capability : Index of cooperation (IOC)=264.
Note 3 - Standard facsimile units conforming to T. 4 must have the following capability : Paper length=297 mm.

| Signal | Identification Signal Format | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Training 1 | - | A fixed pattern is transmitted to the receiving side at a speed (2400 to 14400 bps) designated by DCS, and the receiving side optimizes the automatic equalizer, etc., according to this signal. |
| TCF (Training Check) |  | Sends 0 continuously for 1.5 seconds at the same speed as the training signal. |
| CFR (Confirmation to Receive) | X0100001 | Notifies the sending side that TCF has been properly received. If TCF is not properly received, FTT (Failure To Train) X0100010 is relayed to the sender. The sender then reduces the transmission speed by one stage and initiates training once again. |
| Training 2 |  | Used for reconfirming the receiving side like training 1. |
| Image Signal | Refer to the next page. |  |
| RTC <br> (Return to Control) |  | Sends 12 bits ( $0 . . .01 \times 6$ times) to the receiver at the same speed as the image signal and notifies completion of transmission of the first sheet. |
| EOP (End of Procedure) | X1110100 | End of one communication |
| MCF (Message Confirmation) | X0110001 | End of 1 page reception |
| DCN (Disconnect) | X1011111 | Phase E starts. |
| MPS <br> (Multi-Page Signal) | X1110010 | Completion of transmission of 1 page. If there are still more documents to be sent, they are output instead of EOP. After MCF reception, the sender transmits an image signal of the second sheet. |
| PRI-EOP (Procedural Interrupt-EOP) | X1111100 | If there is an operator call from the sender, it is output after RTC. |
| PIP <br> (Procedural Interrupt Positive) | X0110101 | This is output when an operator call is received. |

## b. Redundancy Compression Process Coding Mode

This unit uses one-dimensional MH format.

(c) Total bit number before MH codification (497 bit)
(d) Total bit number after MH codification (63 bit)

### 6.6.2. Modem Circuit Operation

The modem (IC701) has all the hardware satisfying the ITU-T standards mentioned previously.
When the ASIC IC501 (61) is brought to a low level, the modem (IC701) is chip-selected and the resistors inside IC are selected by the select signals from ASIC (IC501) ADR0-ADR4(pin 83~87). Commands are written through the data bus, and all processing is controlled by the ASIC (IC501) according to ITU-T procedures. Here, the INT signal dispatched from IRQ (pin 108 and 121 of IC701) to the ASIC (IC501) implements post processing.
This modem (IC701) has an automatic application equalizer. With training signal 1 or 2 at the time of G 3 reception, it can automatically establish the optimum equalizer. The modem (IC701) clock is supplied by X701(32.256MHz).

1. Facsimile Transmission/DTMF Line Send

The digital image data on the data bus is modulated in the modem (IC701), and sent from pin 69 via, Analog SW IC702(8 $\rightarrow 9$ ), amplifier IC704(6 $\rightarrow 7$ ) and the NCU section to the telephone line.
Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148)

## 2. Facsimile Reception

The analog image data which is received from the telephone line passes through the NCU section and enters pin 60 of the modem (IC701). The signals that enter pin 60 of the modem (IC701) are demodulated in the board to digital image signals, then placed on the data bus.
In this case, the image signals from the telephone line are transmitted serially. Hence, they are placed on the bus in 8 bit units. Here, the internal equalizer circuit reduces the image signals to a long-distance receiving level.
This is designed to correct the characteristics of the frequency band centered around 3 kHz and maintain a constant receiving sensitivity.
It can be set in the service mode.
Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).
3. DTMF Transmission (Monitor tone)

The DTMF signal generated in the modem (IC701) is output from pin 69, and the NCU section to the telephone line the same as facsimile transmission signals.

## (DTMF Monitor Tone)

Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148)

## 4. Busy/Dial Tone Detection

The path is the same as FAX receiving. When it is detected, the carrier detect bit of the resistor in the modem (IC701) becomes 1 , and this status is monitored by ASIC (IC501).

### 6.7. Analog Section

1. Function

The analog section serves as an interface between the telephone line. The digital board (IC701) for transmission and reception of FAX signals, switches between the digital board (IC701) and other sections by means of a multiplexer in the NCU section. The control signals to the individual analog sections are output mainly from ASIC IC501, and the status information for the various sections is also held in ASIC IC501.
Simple explanations for the various sections are given below.

## 2. Circuit Operation

## [NCU Section]

This is composed of a bell detection circuit, pulse dial generation circuit, CPC detect circuit, vox circuit, amplifier circuit for line transmission and reception, sidetone circuit, Extension phone line off-hook detection circuit, Remote FAX activation circuit.

## [Modem (IC701)]

This is used for FAX signal tone modulation, DTMF signal transmission. The DTMF signal is placed into the TX system.

### 6.7.1. Analog Board Block Diagram



### 6.8. NCU Section

### 6.8.1. General

It is composed of bell detection circuit, pulse dial circuit, TAM interface circuit, line amplifier, sidetone circuits, Remote FAX activation circuit, CPC detection, and a multiplexer.

### 6.8.2. Remote Fax Activation Circuit

## 1. Circuit Operation

After detecting the bell signal, another telephone connected to the same line switches to the FAX mode by DTMF signal.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { TEL LINE } \rightarrow \mathrm{T} 101 \rightarrow \mathrm{C} 118 \rightarrow \mathrm{R} 125 \rightarrow \mathrm{IC} 101(6-7) \rightarrow \mathrm{C} 120 \rightarrow \mathrm{R} 120 \rightarrow \mathrm{IC} 101(2-1) \rightarrow \mathrm{L} 111 \rightarrow \mathrm{CN} 103(11) \rightarrow\{\mathrm{CN} 507(11) \\
& \rightarrow \mathrm{C} 767 \rightarrow \mathrm{R} 769 \rightarrow \mathrm{IC} 701(62)\}
\end{aligned}
$$

### 6.8.3. Bell Detection Circuit

## 1. Circuit Operation

The signal waveform for each point is indicated below. The signal (low level section) input to pin 19 of ASIC IC501 on the digital board is read by ASIC and judged as a bell.

TEL LINE $\rightarrow$ PC102(1, $2-4) \rightarrow\{$ IC501(19) $\}$

Between the Tip and Ring from the telephone line


Between PC102 (1) and (2)


PC102 (4)/ASIC IC501 (19)


Note:
\{ \} : Inside the Digital Board

### 6.8.4. Pulse Dial Circuit and ON/OFF Hook Circuit

While OFF-HOOK, RL101 is ON. Q103 turns on by pin (44) of IC501 as well. On the other hand, while ON-HOOK, Q103 turns OFF by pin (44) of IC501, then the line turns OFF. ON/OFF-HOOK, controlled by pin (44) of IC501, makes the pulse dial operation possible.
$\{$ IC501 (44) LINE RLY Low Level $\rightarrow$ CN507 (16) $\}$ CN103 (16) $\rightarrow$ Q103 OFF $\rightarrow$ RL101 OFF : DC Loop OFF
$\{$ IC501 (44) LINE RLY High Level $\rightarrow$ CN507 (16) $\rightarrow$ CN103 (16) $\rightarrow$ Q103 ON $\rightarrow$ RL101 ON : DC Loop ON
Note:
\{ \} : Inside the Digital Board

### 6.8.5. Line Amplifier and Side Tone Circuit

## 1. Circuit Operation

The reception signal output from the line transformer T101 is input to pin (6) of IC101 via C118, R125 and then the signal is amplified at pin (7) of IC101 and sent to the reception system at 3dB.

The transmission signal goes through C730 and R732 and enters IC704-pin (6), where the signal is amplified to about 24dB. Then, it is output from pin (7) of IC704 and transmitted to T101 via C117, R110 and R191. If the side tone circuit is not applied, the transmission signal will return to the reception amplifier via C118 and R125. When the side tone circuit is active, the signal output from IC704 pin (7) passes through C117, R113, R114, C112 and R112 and goes into the amplifier IC101 pin (5). This circuit is used to cancel the transmission return signal.

## Side Tone Circuit



## Note:

\{ \}: Inside the digital board

### 6.8.6. Calling Line Identification Circuit (FSK)

## 1. Function

This unit is compatible with the Caller ID service offered by your local telephone company. To use this feature, you must subscribe to a Caller ID service. The data for the caller ID from the telephone exchange is sent during the interval between the first and second rings of the bell signal. The data from the telephone exchange is a modem signal which is modulated in an FSK (Frequency Shift Keying) format. Data "0" is a 1200 Hz sine wave, and data 1 a 2200 Hz sine wave.
There are two type of the message format which can be received:i.e.the single data message format and multiple data message format.
The multiple data format allows to transmit the name and data code information in addition to the time and telephone number data.

When there is multiple data in the unit, the name or telephone number are displayed.
2. Circuit Operation:

The caller ID signal input from TEL LINE is processed with IC801.
Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148) for the route of caller ID signal.

## Timing Chart



## - Multiple data message



> .1 word = All 8 bit data
> -Message Type = Fixed value " 10000000 "
> -Message Length Word = number of the Parameter Message word
> .Parameter Type Word = Kind of data (ex. the time, phone number)
> .Parameter Length Word = number of the Parameter data word
> .Parameter Word $(\mathrm{s})=$ the data value

### 6.8.7. Calling Line Identification Circuit (DTMF)

## 1. Function

1. This unit is compatible with the Caller ID service offered by your local telephone company. To use this feature, you must subscribe to a Caller ID service. The data for the Caller ID from the telephone exchange is sent before the first ring signal. The data from the telephone exchange is sent by DTMF signal.
2. 
3. Circuit Operation:
4. The Caller ID signal from TEL LINE is processed with IC801.
5. Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148) for the route of Caller ID (DTMF) signal.

## Timing Chart

DTMF code calling number


### 6.9. ITS (Integrated Telephone System) and Monitor Section

### 6.9.1. General

During the monitor operation, the speaker output passes through the power amplifier (IC705) [Digital board].
The DTMF signal is output from the modem (IC701: digital board). The alarm tone, the key tone, bell tone, and beep are output from gate array IC501 (digital board). During a pulse dial operation, the monitor tone is output from gate array IC501.

### 6.9.2. Speakerphone Circuit

1. Function

The circuit controls the automatic switching of the transmitted and received signals, to and from the telephone line, when the unit is used in the hands-free mode.
2. Circuit Operation

The speakerphone can only provide duplex.
3. Signal path

Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

### 6.9.3. Handset Circuit

1. Function

This circuit controls the conversation over the handset, i.e. the transmitted and received voices to and from the handset.
2. Signal path (Transmission signal)

Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).
3. Signal path (Reception signal)

Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

### 6.9.4. Monitor Circuit

1. Function

This circuit monitors various tones, such as 1 DTMF tone,2 Alarm/Beep/Key tone/Bell 3 Dummy ring back tone.
2. Signal path
a. DTMF MONITOR
(Speaker Operation)
Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).
(Handset Operation)
Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).
b. ALARM/BEEP/KEY TONE/BELL

Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).
c. DUMMY RING BACK TONE

Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

### 6.10. ATAS (Automatic Telephone Answering System) Section

1. Function

The ATAS main operation is performed by the special IC701 (MODEM). IC504 (FLASH MEMORY) control signals are input from ASIC IC501.
a. Greeting/Message Recording
b. ICM Recording
c. Greeting/Message/ICM play to speaker
d. Greeting/Message/ICM play to Tel Line
e. Vox Detection
2. Signal Path

Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

### 6.11. Operation Board Section

The unit consists of a LCD (Liquid crystal display), KEYs and LEDs (light-emitting diodes). They are controlled by the Gate Array (IC301) and ASIC (IC501: on the DIGITAL BOARD).
The key matrix table is shown below.


## Key Matrix

|  | KINO | KIN1 | KIN2 | KIN3 | KIN4 | KIN5 | KIN6 | KIN7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| KSL0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW327 } \\ \text { REDIAL/PAUSE } \end{gathered}$ | SW331 CALLER ID | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW323 } \\ 3 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW319 } \\ 2 \end{gathered}$ | SW315 $1$ | $\xrightarrow{\text { SW311 }}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SW306 } \\ & \text { ERASE } \end{aligned}$ | SW301 |
| KSL1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SW328 } \\ & \text { FI ASH } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SW332 } \\ & \text { STOP } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW324 } \\ 6 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW320 } \\ 5 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW316 } \\ 4 \end{gathered}$ | SW312 $\uparrow$ | SW307 <br> MEMO | SW302 <br> LOCATOR/ INTERCOM |
| KSL2 | SW329 <br> MUTE | SW333 COPY | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW325 } \\ 9 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW321 } \\ 8 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW317 } \\ 7 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW313 } \\ \text { SET } \end{gathered}$ | SW308 <br> CHECK | SW303 PRINT REPORT |
| KSL3 |  |  |  |  |  |  | SW310 PLAYBACK | SW305 AUTO ASNSWER |
| KSL4 | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW330 } \\ \text { SP-PHONE } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW334 } \\ \text { FAX/START } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW326 } \\ \# \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW322 } \\ 0 \end{gathered}$ | SW318 | SW314 | $\begin{gathered} \text { SW309 } \\ \text { REC } \end{gathered}$ | SW304 MENU |

XLED

|  | XLED10 | XLED9 | XL13 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | DOCUMENT <br> SET | DOCUMENT <br> TOP | CHARGE <br> LED |

LED

|  | LED2 | LED3 | LED4 | LED5 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | AUTO <br> ANSWER |  |  |  |

### 6.12. LCD Section

The Gate Array (IC301) works only for writing the ASCII code from the data bus (D4~D7). V0 is supplied for the crystal drive. R310, R311 and R312 are density control resistors.
Consequently, in this unit, the timing (positive clock) is generated by the LCD interface circuitry in the gate array (IC301).

## Circuit Diagram



Timing Chart


| Dlsplay mode | Density | Normal | Dark |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 2 lines (X1.0) | LED1 (IC301-22pin) | H | L |
|  | XL14 (IC301-20pin) | $\mathrm{Hi}-\mathrm{Z}$ | L |
|  | XL 15 (IC301-21pin) | L | L |
|  | LED1 | H | H |
|  | $\mathrm{XL14}$ | $\mathrm{Hi}-\mathrm{Z}$ | $\mathrm{Hi}-\mathrm{Z}$ |
|  | $\mathrm{XL15}$ | $\mathrm{Hi}-\mathrm{Z}$ | L |

### 6.13. Power Supply Board Section

This power supply board uses the switching regulator method.
Block Diagram


## [Input Circuit]

The input current goes into the input rectifier circuit through the filter circuit. The filter circuit decreases the noise voltage and the noise electric field strength.

## [Rectifier Circuit]

The input current is rectified by D101, D102, D103 and D104 and charges C106 to make DC voltage. Then it supplies power to the converter circuit.

## [Kick-on voltage circuit]

Bias is applied to the Q101 gate via this circuit when the AC power is turned on and Q101 begins operating.


The following is an overview of how the power supply unit is controlled.
The control method of this power supply unit is pulse width modulation.

When $Q_{1}$ is $O N$, the energy is charged in the transfer primary coil according to $E_{1}$. When $Q_{1}$ is OFF, the energy is output from the secondary transfer as follows.

$$
\mathrm{L} \rightarrow \mathrm{D}_{1} \rightarrow \mathrm{Load} \rightarrow \mathrm{~L}
$$

Then the power is supplied to the Load. When $Q_{1}$ is $O N$, power is not output from the secondary side. The output voltage is fed back in the control IC according to the error amp rectifier. Then depending on how $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ON}}$ is controlled, stabilization occurs. Also, when the current load becomes too large, in order to decrease the voltage output, the increase in $\tau$ is controlled and the output voltage is stabilized.
Therefore, basically the timing: Ton/Toff of Q1 controls the output voltage.
Output/Input voltage value of ratio


## [Surge Absorber Circuit]

This circuit is for absorbing surge voltage generated by the transformer.
[Control Circuit and Detecting Circuit]
The control circuit amplifies the output with increased voltage detected in the error detecting circuit. Then it drives the main transistor.
In this power supply, the duty ratio is defined by changing the ON period of the main transistor.
This is shown as follows.
When the output voltage of the 24 V circuit increases, the current of the photo coupler PC101 increases, the pulse width of the output control IC becomes narrower and the ON period of Q101 becomes shorter.
[Over Current Limiter (O.C.L)]
The highest drain current (Q101) is limited by a limiter circuit (IC101) of 24 V . The 24 V output is limited by this circuit.

## [Over Voltage Circuit]

If the 24 V output increases because the error detecting circuit or control circuit is broken, IC101 will recognize this signal and output becomes 0 V .

Dummy load method (to quickly check the power supply output)
Refer to Power Supply Board Section (P.153).

### 6.14. Cordless Section

### 6.14.1. Frequency

The frequency range of $2400 \mathrm{MHz} \sim 2480 \mathrm{MHz}$ is used. Transmitting and receiving channel between base unit and handset is same frequency. Refer to the Frequency Table (P.204).

### 6.14.2. FHSS (Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum)

This telephone is using an IC chip which has similar specification to WDCT (World Digital Cordless Telephone) and is the cordless telephone system that can use multiple portable unit simultaneously.
The explanation of this system is mentioned below.
This system uses a Time Division Multiple Access/Time Division Duplex (TDMA/TDD) scheme:
Transmitting and receiving frequencies of the base unit and cordless handset are shared in the same frequency. The construction of RX/TX frequency data is shown below. It consists of 4 slots from the base unit to the cordless handset, and 4 slots from the cordless handset to the base unit, total 8 slots in 10 ms . By this slot system, simultaneous air link and communication between 4 cordless handsets and the base unit can be realized. One communication between cordless handset and the base unit is done by one slot from the base unit to cordless handset, and another slot from cordless handset to the base unit.
DSS makes spectrum spread by multiplying carrier signal by PN code.
The purpose to make spectrum spread is to reduce power density per time and per band.
On the other hand, FHSS makes spectrum spread by changing channel every 10 ms according to Hopping table. Also the purpose to make spectrum spread is to reduce power density per time and per band


### 6.14.2.1. TDD Frame Format



Sync Field (32Bit): Preamble16Bit + SyncWord16Bit
Base set (handset) adjusts the timing of reception so that reception of base set (handset) can correspond to transmission of handset (base unit). It is necessary for sync-field that handset gets synchronization.
A - field (64bit) : Each kinds of DATA: ch data, line condition, etc
B - field (420bit + 80bit) : Sound data + parity
Z - Filed (4Bit) : Parity Check

### 6.14.2.2. TDMA system

This system is the cycles of 10 ms , and has four duplex paths,
so it is possible to perform four duplex communications simultaneously.
In 1 slot 1.25 ms , the 10 ms of voice data is transmitted.
Each slot makes every frame frequency hop. (100hops/sec)
Although each slot (UpLink3 and UpLink4) is different frequency, UpLink3 and DownLink3 use the same frequency.

- 2 - Handsets Link



## Traffic Bearer

A link is established between Base set and handset.
The state where duplex communication is performed.
The hopping pattern of a 1800hops ( 18 seconds) cycle.

## Dummy Bearer

The Base unit send Dummy-data to the all stand-by state Handsets.
The Handsets receive that data for keeping synchronization and monitoring request from the Base unit. Dummy Bearer doesn't contain B-field (sound) data.

### 6.14.2.3. Signal Flowchart in the Whole System

## Reception

CN507 of the base unit is connected to the line from TEL line. While talking, the signal through analog board and digital board, then led to DSP (IC801). The DSP encodes ADPCM and TDD/TDMA with FHSS to TX-DATA. The TX-DATA signal is entered to IC901 of RF UNIT, and modulated to 2.4 GHz . The RF signal is fed into $\mathrm{Tx} / \mathrm{Rx}$ switch (D903/D904). The RF signal is passed through filter (FL901) and fed to ANTENNA.
As for the handset, RF signal from the antenna passes through filter (FL901), then is routed by Tx/Rx switch (D903/D904) and led to IC901. The RF signal is amplified by LNA and down-converted to IF signal in IC901. The IF signal passing through internal filter is demodulated into RX-DATA, then enters DSP (IC201). The DSP performs TDD/TDMA and ADPCM decoding to convert the RX-DATA into the voice signal, then it is output to the speaker.

## Transmission

The voice signal entering from the microphone is led to DSP (IC201). The DSP encodes ADPCM and TDD/TDMA with FHSS to TX-DATA. The TX-DATA signal enters IC901 of RF UNIT, and is modulated to 2.4 GHz . The RF signal is fed into Tx/Rx switch (D903/D904). The RF signal is passed through filter (FL901) and fed to ANTENNA.
As for the base unit, RF signal from the antenna passes through filter (FL901), then is routed by Tx/Rx switch (D903/D904) and led to IC901. The RF signal is amplified by LNA and down-converted to IF signal in IC901. The IF signal passing through internal filter is demodulated into, then enters DSP (IC801). The DSP performs TDD/TDMA and ADPCM decoding to convert the RX-DATA into the voice signal. The voice signal is outputted to the TEL line through digital board and analog board.


### 6.14.3. Explanation of Link Data Communication

### 6.14.3.1. Calling

(STANDBY MODE)


When calling, a communication request DATA (CC-SETUP) is transmitted from the Handset and a permitting DATA (CC-CONNECT) is returned from the Base Unit to it. At that time the audio path opens.

### 6.14.3.2. To Terminate Communication



When the OFF button on the Handset is pressed during communication, a LINK terminating DATA (CC-RELEASE) is sent to terminate the communication. Then DATA (CC-RELEASE-COM) is returned from Base Unit. Handset receives it and reset the link.

### 6.14.3.3. Ringing

(STANDBY MODE)


### 6.14.4. Base Section

### 6.14.4.1. Cordless Base Block Diagram

RF UNIT


### 6.14.4.2. Charge Circuit

Ultra charge ( 170 mA ) of maximum 6 hours is started soon after the Handset is placed on the base unit. Finally the mode changes to trickle charge ( 6 mA ) to prevent overcharging.

## Circuit Diagram



### 6.14.4.3. Line Sending Signal

Refer to Signal Flowchart in the Whole System (P.54).

### 6.14.4.4. Line Receiving Signal

Refer to Signal Flowchart in the Whole System (P.54).

### 6.14.5. Handset Section

### 6.14.5.1. Block Diagram (Handset)



KX-FG2452CX: HNADSET BLOCK DIAGRAM

### 6.14.5.2. Block Diagram (Handset_RF part)

DSP
MOD_EN VBATT2
SCLK
SLE
SDATA
SDIO
SC $\begin{array}{ll}z \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ 0 & \\ 0\end{array}$ $\underset{\sim}{\underset{1}{\underset{1}{2}}}$ TX_DATA

### 6.14.5.3. Construction

The circuit mainly consists of DSP and RF unit as shown in the block diagram.

### 6.14.5.4. DSP: IC201

Function

- Battery Low, Power down detect circuit
- Ringer Generation
- Interface circuit

RF unit, speaker, Mic, LED, Key scan, LCD, Headset


Note:
(*1) The initializing time of the DSP chip is 20 ms under normal conditions.

### 6.14.5.5. RF Unit

Mainly voice signal is modulated to RF, or it goes the other way.

### 6.14.5.6. EEPROM: IC241

All setting data is stored.
ex: ID code, User setting (Phonebook, Caller ID data)

### 6.14.5.7. Power Supply Circuit

Voltage is supplied separately to each block.

Block Diagram (Handset Power)


### 6.14.5.8. Charge Circuit

When the Handset is put on the cradle of the Base unit or the charger, the power is supplied from CHARGE+ and CHARGE- terminals to charge the battery via R368 or Q361, and D361. The voltage between CHARGE+ and CHARGE- flows R231 $\rightarrow$ Q231 $\rightarrow$ pin38 of IC201, where the charge is detected. Then IC201 calculates the battery consumption amount from the previous charge, and it controls Q361/Q362/Q363 by pin80 of IC201 until charging is complete. When charging is complete, the control pattern is switched to Trickle charging form from Operational charging form.


Pin 88 of IC201 monitors the battery voltage and detects BATT LOW at 2.34 V .

### 6.14.5.9. Ringer and Handset SP-Phone



### 6.14.5.10. Sending Signal

The voice signal from the microphone is input to DSP $(90,91)$. CN331 is the headset jack. When the headphone is connected, Q331 detects it. The input from the microphone of the Handset (MIN, MIP) is cut and the microphone signal from the headset is input to DSP (95). Also the power for the microphone is supplied from DSP (92) and the power is turned OFF on standby.


### 6.14.5.11. Reception Signal

The voice signal from the Base Unit is output to DSP (98) (HSSPOUT). This signal is led to the headset jack (CN331). The signal through the headset jack and the other signal output from DSP (97) drives the speaker. When the headset is inserted into the jack, the voice signal is cut at the jack, so the sound does not come out from the speaker, but from the headset only.


## KX-FG2452CX

### 6.14.5.12. 2.4GHz Mod/Demod Circuit (RF Part)

IC901 incorporates all of the modulation and demodulation functions. TX Digital data (TX_DATA) from DSP is supplied to pin 27 of IC901, and then 2.4 GHz TX modulated signal is output from pin1. This TX signal is filtered by BPF (FL901) and supplied to Antenna. 2.4GHz RX signal from the Antenna is filtered by BPF (FL901) and supplied to pin4 of IC901, then demodulated signal (RX_DATA) comes out from pin 16. At the same time, RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) outputs from pin 14. Reference clock ( 13.824 MHz ) from DSP block is supplied to pin 11 of IC901. VBATT2/RF 2.5V supplies 2.5 V regulated voltage.


## 7 Location of Controls and Components

### 7.1. Overview

### 7.1.1. Base Unit


(1) CHARGE indicator
(2) Document guides
(3) Paper tray
(4) Metal recording paper guide
(5) Paper support
(6) Recording paper exit
(7) Recording paper entrance
(8) Antenna
(9) Microphone
(10) Front cover
(11) Document entrance
(12) Document exit
(13) Speaker
(14) Green button (Back cover release button)
(15) Back cover

### 7.1.2. Handset


(1) Antenna
(2) Ringer indicator Message indicator
(3) Receiver
(4) Microphone
(5) Headset jack
(6) Speaker

### 7.2. Control Panel

### 7.2.1. Base Unit


(1) [MIC] (Microphone)

- The built-in microphone.
(2) [GREETING REC]
- To record a greeting message.
(3) [GREETING CHECK]
- To check a greeting message.
(4) [MEMO]
- To record a memo message.
(5) [ERASE]
- To erase messages.
(6) [AUTO ANSWER]
- To turn the auto answer setting ON/OFF.
(7) [PLAYBACK]
- To play messages.
(8) [REDIAL] [PAUSE]
- To redial the last number dialed from the base unit.
- To insert a pause during dialing.
(9) [FLASH]
- To flash time can be changed. (feature \#72 or feature \#052) (Refer to Cordless Handset Programming (P.75) and Program Mode Table (P.123).)
(10) [CALLER ID]
- To use Caller ID features.
(11) [STOP]
- To stop an operation or programming session.
- To erase a character/number. Press and hold to erase all characters/numbers.
(12) [LOCATOR] [INTERCOM]
- To make/answer intercom calls.
- To locate the cordless handset.
- To put a call on hold.
(13) [PRINT REPORT]
- To print lists and reports for reference purposes.
(14) [MENU]
- To start or exit programming.
(15) [PHONEBOOK] [VOLUME]
- To adjust volume.
- To search for a stored item.
(16) [SET]
- To store a setting during programming.


### 7.2.2. Handset



## (1) [Soft keys]

- Two soft keys are used to select the functions displayed directly above each key.


## Example:


(2) [TALK]

- To make/answer calls.
(3) Navigator
- To adjust volume.
- To search for a stored item.
(4) [SP-PHONE]
- For speakerphone operation.


## (5) [TONE]

- To change from pulse to tone temporarily during dialing when your line has rotary pulse service. You can also use tone dial service by changing feature \#13 or feature 051.
(Refer to Cordless Handset Programming (P.75) and Program Mode Table (P.123).)
(6) [PAUSE] [REDIAL]
- To redial one of the last 5 numbers dialed from the cordless handset.
- To insert a pause during dialing.
(7) [MENU]
- To start programming
(8) [OFF]
- To hang up.
- To stop an operation or programming.
(9) [MUTE] [CLEAR]
- To mute your voice during a conversation. Press again to resume the conversation.
- To erase a character/number. Press and hold to erase all characters/numbers.
(10) [HOLD] [INTERCOM]
- To put a call on hold.


## 8 Installation Instructions

### 8.1. Installation Space

The space required to install the unit is shown below.
The dimensions given are necessary for the unit to operate efficiently.


Note:

- Avoid excessive heat or humidity.
- Use the unit within the following ranges of temperature and humidity.
- Ambient temperature: $5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
- Relative humidity: $20 \%$ to $80 \%$ (without condensation)
- Avoid direct sunlight.
- Do not install near devices which contain magnets or generate magnetic fields.
- Do not subject the unit to strong physical shock or vibration.
- Keep the unit clean. Dust accumulation can prevent the unit from functioning properly.
- To protect the unit from damage, hold both sides when you move it.


### 8.2. Connections

## Caution:

- When you operate this product, the power outlet should be near the product and easily accessible.


### 8.2.1. Base Unit

(1) Telephone line cord -Connect to a single telephone line jack.
(2) Power cord -Connect to the power outlet (220-240 V, $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ).


## Note:

- To avoid malfunction, do not position the fax machine near appliances such as TVs or speakers which generate an intense magnetic field.
- If any other device is connected to the same telephone line, this unit may disturb the network condition of the device.

If the fax machine shares a single telephone line with a computer modem or a DSL service:

- Fax transmission/reception may be disturbed, noise interference may be heard during telephone conversations, or Caller ID may not function properly. A filter to prevent this is provided by your provider. Please attach the filter to the telephone line cord of the unit.


### 8.3. Battery Charge

Place the cordless handset on the cradle of the base unit for about 6 hours before initial use.
-The unit will beep once, the [CHARGE] indicator ((1)) will light, and "Charging" will be displayed on the cordless handset display.
-After the cordless handset is fully charged, displaying "Charge completed", it may be left on the base unit without any will effect on the battery.


## Note:

- To ensure the battery charges properly, clean the charge contacts of the cordless handset ((2)) and the charger (3)) with a soft, dry cloth once a month. Clean more often if the unit is subject to grease, dust or high humidity.


## Battery strength

| Handset Display | Battery strength |
| :--- | :--- |
| Furn | Fully charged |
| $\square$ | Medium <br> - When flashing: <br> Needs to be charged |
| $\square$ | Discharged |

## Note:

- When the battery is low, the cordless handset beeps intermittently while it is in use.


## Panasonic battery performance

It should last up to 5 hours while in use (in conversation).
It should last up to about 11 days while not in use (off the base unit). feature.
It should last up to 3 hours while using the clarity booster feature.

## Note:

- Battery power is consumed whenever the cordless handset is off the base unit, even when the cordless handset is not in use. The longer you leave the cordless handset off the base unit, the shorter you can actually talk using the cordless handset.
- Once the battery is fully charged, you should not have to charge it again until "Recharge battery" is displayed and/or — flashes. This will maximize the battery life.


### 8.4. Installing the Ink Film

1. Open the front cover.

2. Release the back cover by pushing the green button ((1)).

3. Open the back cover.

4. Insert the blue gear of the ink film roll into the front left slot of the unit ((2)) and the white gear of the ink film roll into the rear left slot of the unit (3).

- The ink film is safe to touch and will not rub off on your hands like carbon paper.
- Make sure the blue gear ((2)) and white gear (3) are installed as shown.


5. Turn the blue gear ((4)) in the direction of the arrow until the ink film is tight (5)) and at least one layer of ink film is wrapped around the blue core (6)).


## Correct



Incorrect


No ink film is wrapped around the blue core.

6. Close the back cover securely by pushing down on the dotted area at both ends (7).

7. Close the front cover securely.


### 8.5. Installing the Paper Tray

Pull up the metal recording paper guide ( $(1)$ ), then install the paper tray ((2)).


- Make sure the arrows on the paper tray and the unit match.



### 8.6. Paper Support

Hold open the paper support (©), then insert the ends into the holes on the paper tray ((2)).


### 8.7. Installing the Recording Paper

The unit can hold up to 20 sheets of $60 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ to $90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ paper.

1. Fan the paper to prevent paper jams.

2. Insert the paper gently, print-side down (1)).

- Do not force the paper into the paper tray.

- If the paper is not inserted correctly, remove all of the installed paper, and re-install it gently. Otherwise the paper may jam.


Incorrect


Note:

- Remove all of the installed paper before adding paper.


## Document requirements

## Minimum document size



## Maximum document size



## Effective scanning area

- Shaded area will be scanned.



## Document weight

- When faxing a single sheet:

$$
45 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \text { to } 90 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}
$$

- When faxing a multiple sheet:

$$
60 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \text { to } 80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}
$$

## Note:

- Remove chips, staples or other fasteners.
- Do not send the following types of documents. (Make a copy of the document and send the copy.)
- Chemically treated paper such as carbon or carbonless duplicating paper
- Electrostatically charged paper
- Badly curled, creased or torn paper
- Paper with a coated surface
- Paper with a faint image
- Paper with printing on the opposite side that can be seen through the other side, such as newsprint
- Check that ink, paste or correction fluid has dried completely.
- To transmit a document with a width of less than 210 mm , we recommend using a copy machine to copy the original document onto A4 or letter-sized paper, than sending the copied document.


### 8.8. Battery Installation / Replacement

1. Press the notch on the battery cover firmly, and slide the cover.

2. Installation:

Insert the battery ()), and press it down until it snaps into the compartment ((2)).
OR

## Replacement:

Replace the old battery with a new one.
Important:
Please use only a Panasonic battery. See Optional Accessories (P.9).

3. Close the battery cover.


## KX-FG2452CX

## 9 Operation Instructions

### 9.1. Setting Your Logo

You can program your logo (name, company name, etc.) so that it appears on the top of each page sent.


1. [MENU] $\rightarrow[\#][0][2] \rightarrow[S E T]$

LOGO $=$ :
2. Enter your logo, up to 30 characters. See the following character table for details. $\rightarrow$ [SET]
3. Press [MENU] to exit.

To select characters with the dial keypad

| Keypad | Characters |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [1] | \& | , |  | $($ | ) | , | - | . | / | 1 |
| [2] |  | b | b | c | A | B | C | 2 |  |  |
| [3] | d | e | e | $f$ | D | E | F | 3 |  |  |
| [4] | g | h | h | i | G | H | 1 | 4 |  |  |
| [5] | j | k | k | 1 | J | K | L | 5 |  |  |
| [6] | m | n | n | $\bigcirc$ | M | N | O | 6 |  |  |
| [7] | p | q |  | $r$ | s | P | Q | R | S | 7 |
| [8] | t | $u$ | u | v | T | U | V | 8 |  |  |
| [9] | w | $\times$ | x | y | z | W | X | Y | Z | 9 |
| [0] |  |  | Sp | ace) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| [*] | * |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| [\#] | \# |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| [MUTE] | To insert a space. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| [STOP] | To delete a character. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Note:

- To enter a character that is located on the same dial key as the previously entered character, you must first press [ $\mathbf{\mu} \boldsymbol{z}$ ] to move the cursor to the next space.

To enter your logo
Example: "BILL"

1. Press [2] 5 times.
LOGO $=\mathrm{B}$
2. Press [4] 6 times.

## $\mathrm{LOGO}=\mathrm{B}$

3. Press [5] 6 times.

## LOGO=BII

4. Press [ $\quad-$ ] to move the cursor to the next space and press [5] 6 times.

LOGO $=$ BILII

## To correct a mistake

Press [ 4 ] or $[\mathbf{F} \boldsymbol{-}$ ] to move the cursor to the incorrect character, and make the correction.

- To erase all of the characters, press and hold [STOP].


## 9．2．Cordless Handset Programming



1 Press【MENU】．
2 Press the code number（［0］to［9］and【\＃】）．
3 Press the desired direct command to display the desired setting．
－This step may be slightly different depending on the feature．
4 ［Save】（Soft key（1））$\rightarrow$［OFF］
Note：
－To exit programming，press 【OFF】 at any time．

## 9．2．1．Basic Features

| Feature | Feature code | Selection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Changing the ring count in TAM／FAX mode ${ }^{{ }^{1}}$ | Cordless handset： ［0］【6】（1】 | ［0］＂Toll saver＂ <br> ［2］＂ 2 ＂（default） <br> ［3］＂ 3 ＂ <br> ［4］＂4＂ <br> ［5］＂5＂ <br> ［6］＂ 6 ＂ <br> ［7］＂7＂ |
| Changingthe maximum recording time for incoming messages＊${ }^{*}$ | Cordless handset： ［0］［6］（2】 | ［0］＂Greeting only＂：The unit plays the greeting message but does not record any incoming messages． <br> ［1］＂1min＂： 1 minute <br> ［2］＂2min＂： 2 minutes <br> ［3］＂3min＂（default）： 3 minutes |
| Setting the remote operation ID＊1 | Cordless handset： ［0］【6】（3】 | 1．【MENU】 $\rightarrow$ 【0】［6］［3］ <br> 2．Enter a 2－digit number（00－99）． －The default setting is＂ 11 ＂． <br> 3．【Save】（soft key）$\rightarrow$［OFF】 |
| Setting the dialing mode ${ }^{{ }^{*} 1}$ | Cordless handset： ［0］［5］［1］ | ［1］＂Pulse＂：For rotary pulse dial service． <br> ［2］＂Tone＂（default）：For tone dial service． |
| Setting the ringer tone for outside calls | Cordless handset：【1】（2】 | For the cordless handset ringer tone only： <br> ［1］＂Tone 1＂（default） <br> ［2］＂Tone 2 ＂ <br> ［3］＂Tone 3＂ <br> ［4］＂Melody 1＂ <br> ［5］＂Melody 2＂ <br> ［6］＂Melody 3＂ <br> ［7］＂Melody 4＂ |

## 9．2．2．Advanced Features

${ }^{* 1}$ When this setting is changed using the base unit，the setting for the cordless handset will also be changed，and vice versa．

| Feature | Feature code | Selection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Changing the LCD display contrast | Cordless handset： ［0］（1］ | For the cordless handset display contrast only： <br> ［1］Level 1 <br> ［2］Level 2 <br> ［3］Level 3 （default） <br> ［4］Level 4 <br> ［5］Level 5 <br> ［6］Level 6 |
| Setting flash time＊1 | Cordless handset： ［0）【5】（2】 | ［1］＂ 700 ms ＂（default） <br> ［2］＂ 600 ms ＂ <br> ［3］＂ 400 ms ＂ <br> ［4］＂ 300 ms ＂ <br> ［5］＂ 250 ms ＂ <br> ［6］＂ 110 ms ＂ <br> ［7］＂ 100 ms ＂ <br> ［8］＂ 90 ms ＂ |

## 9．2．3．Other Features

| Feature | Code | Selection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Changing the ringer volume | 【1】【1】 | ［0］Off <br> ［1］Low <br> ［2］Medium <br> ［3］High（default） <br> See Operating Instructions for details． |
| Setting the voice enhancer feature | 【5】 | ［0］＂Off＂（default） <br> ［1］＂On＂ <br> See Operating Instructions for details． |
| Copying one phonebook item（from the cordless handset to the base unit） | － | See Operating Instructions for details． |
| Copying all the phonebook items（from the cordless handset to the base unit） | － | See Operating Instructions for details． |
| Setting the key tone | ［0］（2］ | You can select whether or not key tones are heard when keys are pressed．Includes confirmation tones and error tones． <br> ［0］＂Off＂ <br> ［1］＂On＂（default） |
| Setting auto talk feature | ［0］（3） | This feature allows you to answer a call by lifting the cordless handset off the base unit without pressing［TALK］or［SP－ PHONE］． <br> ［0］＂Off＂（default） <br> ［1］＂on＂ |
| Setting the message alert | ［0］（\＃） | You can select whether or not the message indicator on the cordless handset will flash when new messages have been recorded． <br> ［0］＂Off＂（default） <br> ［1］＂on＂ <br> Note： <br> －The message indicator will not flash for new messages while the cordless handset is in use． <br> －Battery life may be shortened when using this feature． |
| Registering the cordless handset | ［0］（0］ | See Operating Instructions for details． |

## 10 Test Mode

### 10.1. Facsimile Section

The codes listed below can be used to perform simple checks for some of the unit's functions. When complaints are received from customers, they provide an effective tool for identifying the locations and causes of malfunctions. To do this, you set the Service mode (Refer to Operation Flow (P.87).) first, then operate the below test items.

| Test Mode | Type of Mode | Code | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Operation after code input |  |
| MEMORY CLEAR | Service Mode | "5" "5" "0" | Refer to Memory Clear Specification (P.90). |
|  |  | SET |  |
| FLASH MEMORY CHECK | Service Mode | "5" "5" "1" | Indicates the version and checks the sum of the FLASH MEMORY. |
|  |  | SET |  |
| DTMF SINGLE TEST | Service Mode | "5" "5" "2" | Outputs the DTMF as single tones. Used to check the frequencies of the individual DTMF tones. Refer to DTMF Single Tone Transmit Selection (P.78). |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \ldots \text { ON } \\ & 2 \ldots . \mathrm{OFF} \end{aligned}$ |  |
| MODEM TEST | Service Mode | " 5 " " 5 " " 4 " | Telephone line circuit is connected automatically, output the following signals on the circuit line. <br> 1) OFF <br> 2) 9600 bps <br> 3)7200bps <br> 4) 4800 bps <br> 5) 2400 bps <br> 6) 300 bps <br> 7) 2100 Hz <br> 8) 1100 Hz |
|  |  | SET |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| SCAN CHECK | Service Mode | "5" "5" "5" | Turns on the LEDs of the CIS and operates the read systems. |
|  |  | SET |  |
| MOTOR TEST | Service Mode | " 5 " " 5 " " 6 " | Rotates the transmission and reception motor to check the operation of the motor. <br> 00: Stop <br> 02: TX <br> 05: Pickup <br> 08: Rx <br> 10: Copy <br> 11: Assist <br> 13: Home position <br> Press [STOP] button to quit. |
|  |  | SET |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| LED CHECK | Service Mode | "5" "5" "7" | All LEDs above the operation panel board flash on and off, or are illuminated. |
|  |  | SET |  |
| LCD CHECK | Service Mode | "5" "5" "8" | Checks the LCD indication. Illuminates all the dots to check if they are normal. |
|  |  | SET |  |
| KEY CHECK | Service Mode | "5" "6" "1" | Checks the button operation. Indicates the button code on the LCD while the button is pressed. Refer to Button Code Table (P.78). |
|  |  | SET (any key) |  |
| MEMORY CLEAR (except History data) | Service Mode | "7" "1" "0" | Refer to Memory Clear Specification (P.90). |
|  |  | SET |  |
| SENSOR CHECK \& VOX CHECK | Service Mode | "8" "1" "5" | If you enter this mode and operate sensor levers with your hands, the LCD display of the related sensor (or switch) turns ON / OFF. Also, when copying a document, the related sensor will turn ON / OFF. (Do, Sn, Co, Mo, Pt, Ri, Vx) <br> For each sensor's operation, refer to Sensors and Switches (P.29). <br> Do Sn Co Mo Pt Ri Vx: LCD DISPLAY <br> Do: Document set sensor <br> :Turns on when the front cover us opened and a document is inserted. <br> Sn: Read position sensor. <br> :Turned on when the front cover is opened and the starts to read a document. <br> Co: Cover open sensor <br> :Turned off when the cover is opened. <br> Mo: Motor home position sensor <br> :A home position detection sensor that is used when shifting the motor mode. <br> Pt: Paper top sensor <br> :Turned on when the cover is opened and the detects a recording paper on the right side end. <br> Ri: Film sensor <br> :Turned off when the film are run out. <br> Vx: Vox signal <br> :Detection signal for the tone on the line. Turns on when there is a tone signal on the line. <br> - Press [STOP] button to quit. |
|  |  | SET |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |


| Test Mode | Type of Mode | Code | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Operation after code input |  |
| DIGITAL SPEAKERPHONE RX \& TX CHECK | Service Mode | "8" "4" "1" | Please refer to Digital Speakerphone (P.151) |
|  |  | SPEAKERPHONE |  |
| PRINT TEST PATTERN | Service Mode | "8" "5" "2" | Prints out the test pattern. <br> Used mainly at the factory to test the print quality. You can select 1~4. (See Print Test Pattern (P.79)) |
|  |  | SET |  |
| CORDLESS CHECK | Service Mode | "9" "5" "8" | Please refer to Test Mode Flow Chart for Cordless Base Unit (P.80) |
|  |  | SET |  |

## Note:

The numbers in the boxes (XXX) indicate the keys to be input for the various test modes.

### 10.1.1. DTMF Single Tone Transmit Selection

When set to ON (=1), the 12 keys and transmission frequencies are as shown.

When set to OFF (=2), the 12 keys and transmission frequencies are as shown.

| key | High Frequency (Hz) | key | Low Frequency (Hz) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $" 1 "$ | 697 | $" 5 "$ | 1209 |
| $" 2 "$ | 770 | $" 6 "$ | 1336 |
| $" 3 "$ | 852 | $" 7 "$ | 1477 |
| $" 4 "$ | 941 | $" 8 "$ | 1633 |


| High (Hz) <br> Low (Hz) | 1209 | 1336 | 1477 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 697 | $" 1 "$ | $" 2 "$ | $" 3 "$ |
| 770 | $" 4 "$ | $" 5 "$ | $" 6 "$ |
| 852 | $" 7 "$ | $" 8 "$ | $" 9 "$ |
| 941 | $" * "$ | $" 0 "$ | $" \# "$ |

## Note:

After performing this check, do not forget to turn the setting off.
Otherwise, dialing in DTMF signal will not work.

### 10.1.2. Button Code Table

| Code | Button Name | Code |  | Code | Button Name |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 00 | NO INPUT | 12 | GREETING RECORD | 31 | 1 |
| 01 | STOP | 14 | MEMO | 32 | 2 |
| 04 | FAX START | 15 | GREETING CHECK | 33 | 3 |
| 06 | COPY | 16 | ERASE | 34 | 4 |
| 08 | SP-PHONE | 18 | PLAY BACK | 35 | 5 |
| 09 | LOCATOR / INTERCOM |  |  | 36 | 6 |
| OA | MUTE |  |  | 37 | 7 |
| 0C | AUTO ANSWER | 20 | MENU | 38 | 8 |
| OD | SET | 22 | PRINT REPORT | 39 | 9 |
|  |  | 25 | [+] VOLUME | 3 A | 0 |
|  |  | 26 | $[-]$ VOLUME | $3 B$ | $*$ |
| 1E | [-] |  |  | $3 C$ | $\#$ |
| 1F | $[4]$ |  |  | $3 D$ | REDIAL / PAUSE |
|  |  |  |  | $3 E$ | FLASH |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | 47 | CALLER ID |  |

### 10.1.3. Print Test Pattern

## 1. Platen roller

$\qquad$
2. Left margin / Top margin


## 3. Thermal head 1 dot


4. Use this test pattern to confirm the torque limiter for Ink film and platen roller timing.

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

### 10.2. Cordless Section

### 10.2.1. Test Mode Flow Chart for Cordless Base Unit

1. Press the [MENU] [\#] [9] [0] [0] [0] [*] [9] [5] [8] keys. LCD display:
```
CORDLESS TEST
```

2. Press the [SET] key and select test items by pressing [ F ] key.
LCD display:
3. Normal Mode
4. RCV Mode
5. SND Data Mode
6. Talk Mode
7. Press the [SET] key and select the channel by [0]~[9] key input. LCD display:

Channel=01
4. Press the [SET] key to start test.

LCD display on the cordless test mode


Channel Number 01~90ch Input 10key

ID on/off Select Mode *Not operate.
Test Mode Number
1: Normal Mode
2: RCV Mode
3: SND Data Mode
4: Talk Mode
TX Data Pattern
$\left(\begin{array}{l}: 00 \text { (Default) } \\ \overline{0}: 0 F \\ A: A A \\ \text { F: FF } \\ \text { P: PN9 }\end{array}\right)$
TX Power Select Mode
1~8 (8: Max Power)
Change by NAVI key[ $\pm$ ]
RX Gain Select Mode
A: Auto
H: High
L: Low
Change by "RECORD" key
Mx Method Mode
(RT: Burst
RC: CW
Change by "Mute" key
Note:

- In case of measurement except test mode: Turn the Power OFF/ON
- Channel setting (Transmitting-Receiving Frequency) of this cordless check need to change on account of Environment


### 10.2.1.1. Test Burst Mode and Test TX-CW Mode



### 10.2.1.2. RX-CW Test Mode


10.2.1.3. Test Link Mode


### 10.2.2. Test Mode Flow Chart for Handset

### 10.2.2.1. TX Burst Mode



Note:
(*1) LCD displays the Channel number.
(exception: default/ CH00 = 1ch.)
(*2) Refer to Check Table for RF Part (P.165) and RX-CW Test Mode (P.82) for proper Base Unit settings.
10.2.2.2. RX-CW Test Mode


## Note:

(*1) LCD displays the Channel number.
(exception: default/ CHOO = 1ch.)
(*2) Refer to Check Table for RF Part (P.165) and Test Burst Mode and Test TX-CW Mode (P.81) for proper Base Unit settings.

### 10.2.2.3. Test Link Mode



## Note:

(*1) LCD displays the Channel number.
(exception: default/ $\mathrm{CH} 00=1 \mathrm{ch}$.)
(*2) If can not proceed to the next step, refer to Re-registering the Cordless Handset (P.163).
(*3) For factory use only.
(*4) Refer to Check Table for RF Part (P.165) and Test Link Mode (P.83) for proper Base Unit settings.

## 11 Service Mode

The programming functions are used to program the various features and functions of the machine, and to test the machine. This facilitates communication between the user and the service man while programming the unit.

### 11.1. Programming and Lists

### 11.1.1. Operation

There are 2 basic categories of programming functions, the User Mode and the Service Mode. The Service Mode is further broken down into the normal and special programs. The normal programs are those listed in the Operating Instructions and are available to the user. The special programs are only those listed here and not displayed to the user. In both the User and Service Modes, there are Set Functions and Test Functions. The Set Functions are used to program various features and functions, and the Test Functions are used to test the various functions. The Set Functions are accessed by entering their code, changing the appropriate value, then pressing the SET key. The Test Functions are accessed by entering their code and pressing the key listed on the menu. While programming, to cancel any entry, press the STOP key.

### 11.1.2. Operation Flow



Operating Procedure


### 11.1.3. Service Function Table

| Code | Function | Set Value | Effective Range | Default | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 501 | Pause time set | X 100 msec | 001~600 | 35 | ---- |
| 503 | Dial speed select | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1: } 10 \mathrm{pps} \\ & \text { 2: } 20 \mathrm{pps} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | 1, 2 | 1 | ---------- |
| 510 | VOX time | 1:6 sec 2:4sec | 1,2 | 1 | ---------- |
| 511 | VOX sense | 1:High 2:Low | 1, 2 | 1 | When the TAM (or EXT TAM) does not stop recording the ICM because noise is detected on the telephone line, change this setting to "LOW". |
| 514 | Bell detection time | X 100 msec | 1~9 | 6 | ---------- |
| 520 | CED frequency select | $\begin{aligned} & 1: 2100 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & 2: 1100 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ | 1,2 | 1 | See Symptom/Countermeasure Table for long distance and international calls in The unit can copy, but cannot either transmit/receive long distance or international communications (P.118). |
| 521 | International mode select | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 1 | See Symptom/Countermeasure Table for long distance and international calls in The unit can copy, but cannot either transmit/receive long distance or international communications (P.118). |
| 522 | Auto standby select | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 1 | The resolution reverts to the default when transmission is complete. |
| 523 | Receive equalizer select | $\begin{aligned} & 1: 0 \mathrm{~km} \\ & \text { 2: } 1.8 \mathrm{~km} \\ & \text { 3: } 3.6 \mathrm{~km} \\ & \text { 4: } 7.2 \mathrm{~km} \end{aligned}$ | 1~4 | 1 | When the telephone station is far from the unit or reception cannot be performed correctly, adjust accordingly. |
| 524 | Transmission equalizer select | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1: } 0 \mathrm{~km} \\ & \text { 2: } 1.8 \mathrm{~km} \\ & \text { 3: } 3.6 \mathrm{~km} \\ & \text { 4: } 7.2 \mathrm{~km} \end{aligned}$ | 1~4 | 1 | When the telephone station is far from the unit or transmission cannot be performed correctly, adjust accordingly. |
| 544 | Document feed position adjustment value set | 1~9 mm | 1~9 | 5 | When the ADF function is in correct, adjust the feed position. |
| 550 | Memory clear |  |  |  | See Memory Clear Specification (P.90). |
| 551 | ROM check |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 552 | DTMF single tone test | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 2 | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 553 | Monitor on FAX communication select | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1:OFF } \\ & \text { 2:PHASE B } \\ & \text { 3:ALL } \end{aligned}$ | 1~3 | 1 | Sets whether to monitor the line signal with the unit's speaker during FAX communication or not. |
| 554 | Modem test |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 555 | Scan check |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 556 | Motor test |  |  | 0 | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 557 | LED test |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 558 | LCD test |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 559 | Document jam detection select | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 1 | Sets whether or not to detect a paper jam. If a document with a length longer than 600 mm is copied or transmitted, the unit stops copying or transmitting as a paper jamming because a document over 600 mm is not normal. In the factory, transmitting or copying a document longer than 600 mm is done as an aging test. In this case, OFF is selected. |
| 561 | KEY test |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 567 | T0 timer | X second | 001~255 | 046 | ---------- |
| 570 | BREAK \% select | 1:61\% 2:67\% | 1, 2 | 1 | Sets the \% break of pulse dialing according PBX. |
| 571 | ITS auto redial time set | X number of times | 00~99 | 5 | Selects the number of times that ITS is redialed (not including the first dial). |
| 572 | ITS auto redial line disconnection time set | X second | 001~999 | 065 | Sets the interval of ITS redialing. |
| 573 | Remote turn-on ring number set | X number of rings | 01~99 | 10 | Sets the number of rings before the unit starts to receive a document in the TEL mode. |
| 574 | Dial tone detect check | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 2 | ---------- |
| 580 | TAM continuous tone detection | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 1 | ON : Stops TAM operation when Dial tone, etc. are detected. |
| 590 | FAX auto redial time set | X number of times | 00~99 | 05 | Selects the number of redial times during FAX communication (not including the first dial). |
| 591 | FAX auto redial time disconnection time set | X second | 001~999 | 065 | Sets the FAX redial interval during FAX communication. |


| Code | Function | Set Value | Effective Range | Default | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 592 | CNG transmit select | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1:OFF } \\ & \text { 2:ALL } \\ & \text { 3:AUTO } \end{aligned}$ | 1~3 | 2 | Lets you select the CNG output during FAX transmission. ALL: CNG is output at phase A. AUTO: CNG id output only when automatic dialing is performed. OFF: CNG id not output at phase A. Refer to Sometime There is a Transmit Problem (P.115). |
| 593 | Time between CED and 300bps | $\begin{aligned} & 1: 75 \mathrm{msec} \\ & 2: 500 \mathrm{msec} \\ & 3: 1 \mathrm{sec} \end{aligned}$ | 1~3 | 1 | See Symptom/Countermeasure Table for long distance and international calls in The unit can copy, but cannot either transmit/receive long distance or international communications (P.118). Refer to Receive Problem (P.116) . |
| 594 | Overseas DIS detection select | 1:detects at the 1st time <br> 2:detects at the 2st time | 1, 2 | 1 | See Symptom/Countermeasure Table for long distance and international calls in The unit can copy, but cannot either transmit/receive long distance or international communications (P.118). Refer to Sometime There is a Transmit Problem (P.115). |
| 595 | Receive error limit value set | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 1: 5 \% \\ & 2: 10 \% \\ & 3: 15 \% \\ & 4: 20 \% \end{aligned}$ | 1~4 | 2 | Refer to Receive Problem (P.116). |
| 596 | Transmit level set | $\begin{aligned} & \text { X dbm } \\ & (10=-10 \mathrm{dbm}) \end{aligned}$ | -15~00 | 10 | Selects the FAX transmission level. Refer to Sometime There is a Transmit Problem (P.115) and Receive Problem (P.116). |
| 598 | Receiving sensitivity | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{X} \mathrm{dbm} \\ & (40=-40 \mathrm{dbm}) \end{aligned}$ | -20~-48 | 40 | Used when there is an error problem. Refer to The unit can copy, but cannot either transmit/receive long distance or international communications (P.118). Power is OFF/ON after changing this set value. |
| 710 | Memory clear except History data |  |  |  | See Memory Clear Specification (P.90). |
| 717 | Transmit speed selection | 1:9600BPS $2: 7200 B P S$ $3: 4800 B P S$ $4: 2400 B P S$ | 1~4 | 1 | Adjusts the speed to start training during FAX transmission. Refer to Sometime There is a Transmit Problem (P.115) and The unit can copy, but the transmission and reception image are incorrect (P.120). |
| 718 | Receive speed selection | $1: 9600 B P S$ $2: 7200 B P S$ $3: 4800 B P S$ $4: 2400 B P S$ | 1~4 | 1 | Adjusts the speed to start training during FAX reception. Refer to Receive Problem (P.116) and The unit can copy, but the transmission and reception image are incorrect (P.120). |
| 722 | Redial tone detect | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 1 | Sets the tone detection mode after redialing. |
| 745 | Power ON film feed | 1:ON 2:OFF | 1, 2 | 1 | When the power is turned on, the film is wound to take up any slack. |
| 763 | CNG detect time for friendly reception | $1: 10 \mathrm{sec}$ $2: 20 \mathrm{sec}$ $3: 30 \mathrm{sec}$ | 1~3 | 3 | Selects the CNG detection tone of friendly reception. |
| 773 | DIS-DIC interval | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1: } 500 \mathrm{msec} \\ & \text { 2: } 200 \mathrm{msec} \end{aligned}$ | 1, 2 | 2 | This is similar to \#594. The time interval from receiving DIS to sending DCS can be changed to wait for the echo canceler to recover. |
| 774 | T4 timer | X 100 msec | 00~99 | 0 | Use this function when delay occurs in the line and communication (ex. Mobile comm) does not work well. |
| 784 | Voice prompt test |  |  |  | You can hear the voice prompt from speaker after pressing "START" key. |
| 815 | Sensor \& Vox check |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 841 | Digital SP-phone check |  |  |  | See Digital Speakerphone (P.151). |
| 852 | Print test pattern |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |
| 853 | Top margin |  | 1~9 | 5 | ----------- |
| 861 | Paper size | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { 1:A4 } \\ \text { 2:Letter } \end{array}$ | 1, 2 | 1 | ---------- |
| 874 | DTMF ON time | X 10 msec | 06~20 | 18 | ---------- |
| 875 | DTMF OFF time | X 10 msec | 06~20 | 09 | -------- |
| 880 | History list |  |  |  | See History (P.94). |
| 881 | Journal 2 list |  |  |  | See Printout Example (P.111). |
| 882 | Journal 3 list |  |  |  | See Printout Example (P.111). |
| 958 | Cordless test |  |  |  | See Test Mode (P.77). |

### 11.1.4. Memory Clear Specification

| Item | Status after Memory Clear |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | Service Mode \#550*1 | Service Mode \#710*2 |
| Date and time (user mode \#001) | - | Default |
| Your logo (user mode \#002) | - | Default |
| Your Fax Number (user mode \#003) | - | Default |
| One touch dial and Directory | - | Default |
| History | - | - |
| Top margin (service mode \#853) | - | - |
| Other Setting data <br> (User setting and Service setting data) | Default | Default |

- : Not changed
${ }^{* 1}$ Execute Service Mode \#550 when you want to reset the all setting data keeping the user information.
${ }^{* 2}$ Execute Service Mode \#710 to clear the user information in case that Main Unit is recycled.


## Note:

- Please restart a power supply after clearing a memory.
- Refer to Base Unit (P.91) for Handset memory clear.


### 11.2. How to Clear User Setting

Units are reset to the Factory settings by this operation (Erase recorded Voice messages, stored Phone numbers, Caller list and etc.).
This operation should not be performed for a usual repair.

### 11.2.1. Base Unit

1. Press[MENU】, then [\#][9](0][0][0].
2. Press[*], then[7][1][0].
3. Press[SET].
4. POWER OFF.

Note:
Refer to Memory Clear Specification (P.90).

### 11.2.2. Handset



Note:
(*1) Be sure to short the battery terminals of the Handset with a lead wire, etc. for 2 seconds for discharge after removing the battery.

### 11.3. The Example of the Printed List

### 11.3.1. User Mode

## SETUP LIST

[ BASIC FEATURE LIST I



## Note:

The above values are the default values.

### 11.3.2. Service Mode Settings

« SERUICE DATA LIST I


503 DIAL SFEED
510 VOX TIME
520 CED FRER.
521 HNTL. MIDE
522 AUTO STANDEY
523 FB EML.
524 TX EDL.
853 TUP MAREIN

Set Value

〔 SPECIAL SERUICE SETTINGS

| 511 | 514 | 544 | 552 | 553 | 559 | 567 | 570 | 571 | 572 | 573 | 580 | 590 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Code | Set ${ }_{\text {E }}$ | ue 5 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 0.46 | 1 | 05 | DES | 10 | 1 | 0.5 |
| 591 | 592 | 593 | 594 | 595 | 596 | 598 | 717 | 718 | 722 | 745 | 763 | 771 |
| 065 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 10 | 40 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 1 |


| 773 | 774 | 661 | 874 | 875 |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| 2 | 064 | 1 | 18 | 09 |

USAGE TIME $=$ OOUOD HOURS
Note:
The above values are the default values.

## 11．3．3．History

【 HISTORY 】
$\qquad$

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| 「－NE－（4） |  |
| 「－NE」－（5） |  |
|  | re－－－ |
|  <br> － |  |
|  |  |
|  | agent-(20) |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

NAME $\qquad$ DATE $\qquad$ DEALER $\qquad$ FILM $\qquad$
oustomer cimplaint
 RBLGE（CLSTAEALERGHIP）NEU OPENNOT： PHIME SURUEY RESULT．

## Note：

See the following descriptions of this report．Item No．（1）～（44）are corresponding to the listed items in Descriptions of the History Report（P．95）．

### 11.3.3.1. Descriptions of the History Report

(1) SOFTWARE VERSION

FLASH ROM version
(2) SUM

FLASH ROM internal data calculation.
(3) YOUR LOGO

The user logo recorded in the unit. If it is not recorded, NONE will be displayed.
(4) YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER

The user telephone number recorded in the unit. If it is not recorded, NONE will be displayed.
(5) FAX PAGER NUMBER

If you program a pager number into the unit, the pager number will be displayed here.
(6) FACTORY - CUSTOMER

This shows how many days from factory production until the user turns ON the unit.
(7) MONTH

The shows the very first month, date, year and time set by the user after they purchased the unit.
(8) DAY

The shows the very first month, date, year and time set by the user after they purchased the unit.
(9) YEAR

The shows the very first month, date, year and time set by the user after they purchased the unit.
(10) TIME

The shows the very first month, date, year and time set by the user after they purchased the unit.
(11) USAGE TIME

The amount of time the unit has been powered ON.
(12) FACTORY - NOW

This shows how many days from factory production until the user prints out this history list.
(13) TEL MODE

The amount of time the TEL mode setting was used.
(14) FAX MODE

The amount of time the FAX mode setting was used.
(15) TEL/FAX MODE

The amount of time the TEL/FAX mode setting was used.
(16) ANS/FAX MODE

The amount of time the ANS/FAX mode setting was used.
(17) FINAL RECEIVE MODE

The last set receiving mode by the user.
(18) TONE/PULSE SELECTION

The most recently used setting used, either TONE or PULSE.

## (19) RECEIVE REDUCTION

The compression rate when receiving.
(20) SETTING NO. OF DIRECTORY

The recorded directory stations.
(21) NUMBER OF COPY

The number of pages copied.
(22) NUMBER OF RECEIVE

The number of pages received.
(23) NUMBER OF SENDING

The number of pages sent.
(24) NUMBER OF CALLER ID

The number of times Caller ID was received.
(25) NUMBER OF RECORDING MESSAGE

The number of messages recorded in TAM.
(26)~(29) Not Used
(30) NUMBER OF PRINTING WARNING LIST

The number of warning lists printed until now.
(31) NUMBER OF PRINTING HELP

The number of help lists printed until now.
(32) NUMBER OF DIVIDED PRINTING IN FAX RECEPTION The number of faxes received that were divided into more than one sheet since the unit was purchased.
(33) Not used
(34) FAX MODE

Means the unit received a fax message in the FAX mode.
(35) MAN RCV

Means the unit received a fax message by manual operation.
(36) FRN RCV

Means the unit received a fax message by friendly signal detection.
(37) VOX

Means the unit detected silence or no voice.
(38) RMT DTMF

Means the unit detected DTMF (Remote Fax activation code) entered remotely.
(39) PAL DTMF

Means the unit detected DTMF (Remote Fax activation code) entered by a parallel connected telephone.
(40) TURN-ON

Means the unit started to receive after 10 rings. (Remote
Turn On: Service Code \#573)
(41) TIME OUT

Means the unit started to receive after Ring Time Out in the EXT-TAM or TEL/FAX mode.
(42) IDENT

Means the unit detected Ring Detection.
(43) CNG OGM

Means the unit detected the CNG while it was sending the Dummy Ring Back Tone in the TEL/FAX mode, or while answering a call in the EXT-TAM mode. Or means the unit detected the CNG while it was sending the OGM in the ANS/FAX mode.
(44) CNG ICM

Means the unit detected the CNG while it was recording the ICM in the ANS/FAX mode.

## 12 Troubleshooting Guide

### 12.1. Troubleshooting Summary

After confirming the problem by asking the user, troubleshoot according to the instructions and observe the following precautions.

### 12.1.1. Precautions

1. If there is a problem with the print quality or the paper feed, first check if the installation space and the print paper meets the specifications, the paper selection lever/paper thickness lever is set correctly, and the paper is set correctly without any slack.
2. Before troubleshooting, first check that the connectors and cables are connected correctly (not loose). If the problem occurs randomly, check it very carefully.
3. When connecting the AC power cord with the unit case and checking the operation, exercise utmost care when handling electric parts in order to avoid electric shocks and short-circuits.
4. After troubleshooting, double check that you have not forgotten any connectors, left any loose screws, etc.
5. Always test to verify that the unit is working normally.

### 12.2. Error Messages-Display

If the unit detects a problem, one or more of the following messages will appear on the display.
The explanations given in the [ ] are for servicemen only.

### 12.2.1. Base Unit

## "BACK COVER OPEN"

- The back cover is open. Close the back cover firmly.


## "CALL SERVICE"

- [This error is displayed when the thermal head does not warm up. Check the thermistor on the thermal head and connector lead.]
"CALL SERVICE 2"
- [This error is displayed when the gear is not in an idle state. Check the GEAR BLOCK.] (Refer to Gear Section (P.207).)


## "CHECK DOCUMENT"

- The document was not fed into the unit properly. Re-insert the document. If misfeeding occurs frequently, clean the document feeder rollers and try again.
(Refer to Document feeder/recording paper feeder/scanner glass cleaning (P.215).)
- The document is longer than $600 \mathrm{~mm}\left(23^{5} / 8^{\prime \prime}\right)$. Press
[STOP] to remove the document. Divide the document into two or more sheets, and try again.
[Alternately, turn off service code \#559 to enable sending of documents longer than 600 mm ] (Refer to Service Function Table (P.88).)
"CHECK FILM"
- The ink film is empty. Replace the ink film with a new one.
- The ink film is not installed. Install it.
- The ink film is slack or creased. Tighten it.
(Refer to step 5 on Installing the Ink Film (P.69).)


## "CHECK MEMORY"

- The base unit memory (telephone numbers, parameters, etc.) has been erased. Re-program.


## "CHECK PAPER"

- The recording paper is not installed or the unit has run out of paper. Install paper and [SET] to clear the message.
- The recording paper was not fed into the unit properly. (Refer to When the recording paper was not fed into the unit properly (P.215).) Reinstall paper and press [SET] to clear the message.
(Refer to Installing the Recording Paper (P.72).)
- The recording paper has jammed near the recording paper entrance. Remove the jammed paper and press [SET] to clear the message. (Refer to Recording Paper Jams (P.214).)


## "ERROR!!"

- The cordless handset tried to copy phonebook items but the copy has been stopped.


## "FAX IN MEMORY"

- See the other displayed message instructions to print out the document.
Received documents are stored in memory due to a lack of recording paper, a lack of ink film or a recording paper jam. Install paper, install ink film or remove the jammed paper. You will lose all faxes in memory if the power is removed. Check with power connected.
(Refer to Installing the Recording Paper (P.72) and Installing the Ink Film (P.69) and Recording Paper Jams (P.214).)


## "FAX MEMORY FULL"

- The memory is full of received documents due to a lack of recording paper, a lack of ink film or a recording paper jam. Install paper, install ink film or remove the jammed paper. You will lose all faxes in memory if the power is removed. Check with power connected. (Refer to Installing the Recording Paper (P.72) and Installing the Ink Film (P.69) and Recording Paper Jams (P.214).)
- When performing memory transmission, the document being stored exceeded the memory capacity of the unit. Send the entire document manually.


## "FILM EMPTY"

- The ink film is empty. Replace the ink film with a new one.
- The ink film is slack. Tighten it (See step 5 on Installing the Ink Film (P.69).) and install again.
- The fax machine is positioned near appliances such as TVs or speakers which generate an intense magnetic field.


## "FILM NEAR EMPTY"

- The remaining ink film is low. Prepare a new ink film. (Refer to Optional Accessories (P.9).)


## "INCOMPLETE"

- The phonebook copy stopped because the destination cordless handset was out of range. Press [STOP] to clear the message.


## "MEMORY FULL"

- When making a copy, the document being stored exceeded the memory capacity of the unit. Press [STOP] to clear the message. Divide the document into sections.


## "MESSAGE FULL"

- There is no room left in memory to record voice messages. Erase unnecessary messages.


## "MODEM ERROR"

- There is something wrong with the unit's modem. (Refer to Test Mode (P.77) and Digital Board Section (P.141).)


## "NO FAX REPLY"

- The other party's fax machine is busy or has run out of recording paper. Try again.


## "NO ITEMS STORED"

- You tried to copy your phonebook items to the cordless handset, but your phonebook was empty.

```
"OPEN CABINET
CHECK FILM SLACK"
"OPEN CABINET
CHECK FILM TYPE"
```

- Please use genuine Panasonic replacement film.
(Refer to Optional Accessories (P.9).)
- The ink film is slack. Tighten it (See step 5 on Installing the Ink Film (P.69)) and install again.
- The fax machine is positioned near appliances such as TVs or speakers which generate an intense magnetic field.


## "PAPER JAMMED"

- A recording paper jam occurred. Remove the jammed paper. (Refer to Recording Paper Jams (P.214).)
- You forced the recording paper into the paper tray too strongly. Remove all of the installed paper, and re-install it gently.


## "PHONEBOOK FULL"

- There is no space to store new items in the phonebook. Erase unnecessary items.
- The phonebook memory of the cordless handset is already full, or became full when copying phonebook items. Copying was stopped. Press [STOP] to exit the mode. Erase other stored items in the cordless handset phonebook, then try again.

```
"PLEASE WAIT"
```

- The unit is checking that there is no slack or crease in the ink film. Wait for a moment while the check is completed.


## "RECORDING ERROR"

- You recorded your greeting message or memo message less than 1 second in length and recording has failed. Try again.
"REDIAL TIME OUT"
- The other party's fax machine is busy or has run out of recording paper. Try again.
"REMOVE DOCUMENT"
- The document is jammed. Remove the jammed document. (Refer to Document Jams - sending (P.215).)
- Press [STOP] to eject the jammed paper.


## "SERIAL ERROR"

- There is something wrong with the unit and the base unit will not work.
(Refer to Digital Board Section (P.141).)


## "TRANSMIT ERROR"

- A transmission error occurred. Try again.
- If you send a fax overseas, try the following:
-Make sure the other party's number is a fax number.
-Use the overseas transmission mode (feature \#23 on Program Mode Table (P.123)).
-Add 2 pauses at the end of the telephone number or dial manually.


## "UNIT OVERHEATED"

- The unit is too hot. Stop using the unit for a while and let the unit cool down.


### 12.2.2. Handset

```
"Busy"
```

- The called base unit is in use.

```
"Error!!"
```

- When you tried to register the cordless handset, the cordless handset and the base unit could not link for some reason, such as interference from electrical appliances. Move the cordless handset and the base unit away from the electrical appliances and try again.

```
"---Incomplete---
Phonebook full"
```

- When the phonebook item(s) was (were) sent to the base unit, the base unit's phonebook memory was full and copying stopped. Press [OFF] to exit. Erase items from the base unit's phonebook. When phonebook memory is available, you can copy all phonebook items or individual items one by one.

```
"No link to base. Move
closer to base, try
again."
```

- The cordless handset has lost communication with the base unit. Move closer to the base unit, and try again
- Confirm that the base unit's power cord is plugged in
- Raise the base unit antenna.
- The cordless handset's registration may have been canceled. Re-register the cordless handset.


## "Phonebook full"

- There is no space to store new items in the phonebook. Erase unnecessary items.


## "No item stored"

- Your phonebook or redial list is empty.

```
"Please lift up and
try again."
```

- A cordless handset button was pressed while the cordless handset was on the base unit. Lift the cordless handset and press the button again.

```
"System is busy.
Please try again later."
```

- The cordless handset has lost communication with the base unit. Move closer to the base unit and try again.
- Another user is listening to messages. Try again later.


### 12.3. Error Messages-Report

### 12.3.1. Journal Report

If a problem occurs during fax transmission or reception, one of the following messages will be printed on the sending and journal reports.

How to output the Journal Report

1. Press [PRINT REPORT].
2. Press $[\mathbf{- 1}]$ or $[\mathbf{~}]$ repeatedly to display " JOURNAL REPORT ".
3. Press [SET].
4. The report is printed out.


## Error code table:

| (1) CODE | (2) RESULT | (3) MODE | SYMPTOM | Countermeasure* |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | PRESSED THE STOP KEY | SND \& RCV | Communication was interrupted by the STOP button. |  |
|  | DOCUMENT JAMMED | SND | The document paper is jammed. |  |
|  | NO DOCUMENT | SND | No document paper. |  |
|  | THE COVER WAS OPENED | SND \& RCV | The cover is open. |  |
|  | OTHER FAX NOT RESPONDING | SND | Transmission is finished when the T1 TIMER expires. | 1 |
| 28 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | SND \& RCV |  |  |
| 41 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | SND | DCN is received after DCS transmission. | 2 |
| 42 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | SND | FTT is received after transmission of a 2400BPS training signal. | 3 |
| 43 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | SND | No response after post message is transmitted three times. | 4 |
| 44 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | SND | RTN and PIN are received. | 5 |
| 46 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | No response after FTT is transmitted. | 6 |
| 48 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | No post message. | 7 |
| 49 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | RTN is transmitted. | 8 |
| 50 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | PIN is transmitted (to PRI-Q). | 8 |
| 51 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | PIN is transmitted. | 8 |
|  | OTHER FAX NOT RESPONDING | RCV | Reception is finished when the T1 TIMER expires. | 9 |
| 54 | ERROR-NOT YOUR UNIT | RCV | DCN is received after DIS transmission. | 11 |
| 58 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | DCN is received after FTT transmission. | 13 |
| 59 | ERROR-NOT YOUR UNIT | SND | DCN responds to the post message. | 14 |
| 65 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | SND | DCN is received before DIS reception. | 2 |
| 65 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | Reception is not EOP, EOM PIP, PIN, RTP or RTN. | 2 |
| 68 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | No response at the other party after MCF or CFR is transmitted. | 13 |
| 70 | ERROR-NOT YOUR UNIT | RCV | DCN is received after CFR transmission. | 13 |
| 72 | COMMUNICATION ERROR | RCV | Carrier is cut when the image signal is received. | 16 |
|  | MEMORY FULL | RCV | The document was not received due to memory full. |  |
|  | JUNK FAX PROH. REJECT | RCV | The fax was rejected by the junk fax prohibitor feature. |  |
|  | CANCELLED | SND | The multi-station transmission was rejected by the user. |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| FF | COMMUNICATION ERROR | SND \& RCV | Modem error. For the DCN, DCN, etc. abbreviations, refer to Modem Section (P.33). | 12 |

SND=TRANSMISSION RCV=RECEPTION

Most fax communication problems can be resolved by the following steps.

1. Change the transmit level. (Service code: 596, refer to Service Function Table (P.88).)
2. Change the TX speed/RX speed. (Service code: 717/718, refer to Service Function Table (P.88).)

## Note:

If the problem remains, see the following "Countermeasure" flow chart.

## Countermeasure




## REFERENCE:

Test Mode (P.77)


No response after the post message is transmitted three times.

Inquire with the receiver if the caller's document was sent correctly.


Ask the service section for the receiver's FAX machine to confirm the machine's condition.


RTN and PIN are received.


## REFERENCE:

Test Mode (P.77)


## REFERENCE

Test Mode (P.77)


## REFERENCE:

Test Mode (P.77)



## REFERENCE:

Test Mode (P.77)


## REFERENCE:

Test Mode (P.77)

### 12.3.2. Special Service Journal Reports

Journal 2 and Journal 3 shown below, which are special journals giving the additional detailed information about the latest 35 communications, can be printed by Service Code 881 or 882 . Remote printing function for the journal reports (JOURNAL, JOURNAL 2 and JOURNAL 3) is also available for service technicians. (Refer to Remote Programming (P.122).) The JOURNAL report only gives you basic information about a communication, but the other two journal reports provide different information on the same item (communication).


## HOW TO READ JOURNAL REPORTS:

## Example:

1. Look at NO. 01 in the JOURNAL. If you want to know about the details about that item, see NO. 01 in the JOURNAL 2 and the JOURNAL 3. You can get the following information.

* MODE: Fax transmission
* RCV. MODE: TEL
* TX SPEED: 9.6 kbps
* RESOLUTION: standard
* ENCODE: MH
* MAKER CODE: 79

2. Look at NO. 04 in the JOURNAL 2. CNG (0003) indicates that the CNG signal has been received three times since the purchase date.
For further details, see Journal 2 (P.110) and Journal 3 (P.111).

### 12.3.2.1. Journal 2

Refer to JOURNAL 2 in Printout Example (P.111).
Journal 2 displays the additional detailed information about the last 35 communications.

## Descriptions:

## (1) RCV. MODE

Indicates which receive mode the unit was in when the unit received a fax message.
This information is also displayed when the unit transmitted a fax message.
(2) SPEED

Indicates the speed of the communication. If multiple pages are transmitted or received, it indicates the last page's communication speed. If there is a communication error, "?" is displayed.

## (3) RESOLUTION

Indicates the resolution of the communication. If multiple pages are transmitted or received, it indicates the last page's resolution. If there is a communication error, "?" is displayed.
(4) RCV-TRIG. (CNT.)

Indicates the trigger that causes the unit to switch to the fax receive mode. The available options are listed in JOURNAL 2 in Printout Example (P.111). The values in parentheses indicate how many times the trigger has been used. (For example, "0003" means three times.)

| No. | Display |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | FAX MODE | Function |
| 2 | MAN RCV | Means the unit received a fax message in the FAX mode. |
| 3 | FRN RCV | Means the unit received a fax message by friendly signal detection. |
| 4 | VOX | Means the unit detected silence or no voice. |
| 5 | RMT DTMF | Means the unit detected DTMF (Remote Fax activation code) entered remotely. |
| 6 | PAL DTMF | Means the unit detected DTMF (Remote Fax activation code) entered by a parallel connected tele- <br> phone. |
| 7 | TURN-ON | Means the unit started to receive after 10 rings. (Remote Turn On: Service Code \#573) |
| 8 | TIME OUT | Means the unit started to receive after Ring Time Out. |
| 9 | IDENT | Means the unit detected Ring Detection. |
| 10 | CNG OGM | Means the unit detected the CNG while it was sending the OGM in the TAM/FAX mode. |
| 11 | CNG ICM | Means the unit detected the CNG while it was recording the ICM in the TAM/FAX mode. |

(5) ERROR $\rightarrow$ MEMORY

Indicates the reason why the unit received a fax message in memory.
If you look at No. 11 in the JOURNAL 2 in Printout Example (P.111), it shows the fax message was received in memory due to "PAPER OUT" error.

## NO RESPONSE DISAPPEARED ON JOURNAL

The "NO RESPONSE DISAPPEARED ON JOURNAL" displays the information about the last 10 communications terminated by "No Response". (Some of the communications terminated by "No Response" were not displayed in the JOURNAL.)
When a fax transmission cannot be performed because the other party's unit is set to the TEL mode, "No response" will be printed.

### 12.3.2.2. Journal 3

Refer to JOURNAL 3 in Printout Example (P.111).

## Descriptions

(6) ENCODE

Compression Code: MH/MR

## (7) MSLT

MSLT means Minimum Scan Line Time. Used only at the factory.
(8) EQM

EQM means Eye Quality Monitor. Used only at the factory.

## (9) ERROR LINE(RX)

When an error occurs while receiving a fax, this shows the number of error lines

## (10) MAKER CODE

This shows a 2 digit code of the other party's fax machine brand.

0E: "KX" model
00: Unknown
79: "UF" model
19: "Xerox" model

### 12.3.2.3. Printout Example

 JOURNAL2Mar. 252006 日1:59PM

| NO. | RCU. MODE | SPEED | CONT. 3 | RESDLITION | RCU-TRIG. (CNT.) | ERROR->MEMORY |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 01 | FAX ONLY | 9600 BPS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 02 | FAX ONLY | 9600BFS |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 03 | FAX ONLY | 9600.BPS |  | FINE. |  |  |
| 04 | FAX ONLY | 96008PS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 05 | FAX ONLY | 9600BPS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 05 | FAX ORLLY | 9600BPS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 07 | FAX OHLY | 9600 BPS |  | FINE. |  |  |
| 08 | FAX ONLY | 9600 BPS |  | FINE. |  |  |
| 09 | FAX ONLY | 96008PS |  | FINE. |  |  |
| 10 | FAX ONLY | 9600BPS |  | STD. | FAX MAD |  |
| 11 | FAX ONLY | 9600BPS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD | PAPER DUT |
| 12 | FAX ONLY | 9600bFS |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 13 | FAX ONLY | 9600BPS |  | STD. |  |  |
| 14 | FAX ONLY | ? |  | ? |  |  |
| 15 | FRX ONLY | ? |  | ? |  |  |
| 16 | FAX ONLY | ? |  | ? |  |  |
| 17 | FAX ONLY | 9600BPS |  | STD. |  |  |
| 18 | FAX ONLY | 9600BPS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 19 | FAX ONLY | 9600BFS |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 20 | FAX ONLY | 96008PS |  | S-FINE. |  |  |
| 21 | FAX ONLY | $96008 P 5$ |  | FINE. |  |  |
| 22 | FAX ONLY | 9600BPS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 23 | FAX ONLY | ? |  | ? | FAX MID |  |
| 24 | FAX ONLY | 960abps |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 25 | FAX ONL Y | 9600BPS |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 26 | FAX ONLY | 9601BPS |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 27 | FAX ONLY | 9600BP' |  | FINE. |  |  |
| 28 | FAX ONLY | 96008PS |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 29 | FAX ONLY | $96008 P 5$ |  | FINE. | FAX MOD |  |
| 30 | FAX ONLY | 96008PS |  | S-Fine. | FAX MOD |  |
| 31 | FAX ONLY | $96008 P 5$ |  | STD. | FAX MDD |  |
| 32 | FAX ONLY | 96008P5 |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 33 | FAX ONLY | ? |  | ? | FAX MOD |  |
| 34 | FAX ONLY | 96003PS |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |
| 35 | FAX ONLY | 96008P5 |  | STD. | FAX MOD |  |

## NO RESPONSE DISAPPEARED ON JOURNAL

JOURNAL3
Mar. 25 2006 01:58PM

| NO. | ENCODE | MSLT | EDM (RX) | ERROR LINE (RX) | MAKER CODE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 01 | MR | 10msec | 007A | 00000 | EE |
| 02 | MR | 20 msec | 016B | 00000 | 00 |
| 0.3 | MH | 10msec | 0000 | 00000 | 00 |
| 64 | MR | 20 msec | 0198 | 00003 | 00 |
| 05 | MR | 20 msec | 0156 | 00011 | 00 |
| 06 | MR | 20 msec | 0113 | 00000 | 00 |
| 07 | $M R$ | 5 msec | 0000 | 00000 | 79 |
| 08 | MR | 5 msec | 0000 | 00000 | 79 |
| 09 | MR | Dmsec | 0000 | 00000 | 19 |
| 10 | MR | 20 msec | 0100 | 00000 | 00 |
| 11 | MR | 10msec | 0073 | 00000 | DE |
| 12 | MR | 20 msec | 012 B | 00000 | 00 |
| 13 | MH | 20 msec | 0000 | 00000 | 79 |
| 14 | MH | 20msec | 0000 | 00000 | 00 |
| 15 | MH | 20 msec | 0000 | 00000 | 00 |
| 16 | MH | 20msec | 01000 | 00000 | 00 |
| 17 | MR | 5 msec | 0060 | 00000 | 79 |
| 16 | MR | 18 msec | 00AB | 00004 | QE |
| 19 | MR | 20msec | 0124 | 00000 | 00 |
| 20 | MR | 20 msec | 0000 | - 0 aba | 00 |
| 21 | MR | $20 \mathrm{mbsec}^{\text {c }}$ | 0000 | -10000 | 00 |
| 22 | MR | 20 msec | 0135 | 00000 | 00 |
| 23 | MR | 20 msec | 0000 | 00000 | 00 |
| 24 | MR | 20 msec | -1BC | 00000 | 00 |
| 25 | MR | 20 msec | O1RC | 00000 | $00^{0}$ |
| 26 | MR | 20 msec | DEDF | 000000 | B0 |
| 27 | MR | 10 msec | 01000 | 90100 | OE |
| 28 | MR | 20 msec | Q1DF | 010000 | 00 |
| 29 | MR | 20 msec | O1EA | 20000 | 00 |
| 30 | MR | 20 msec | OUCD | 00000 | 90] |
| 31 | MR | 20 msec | 02F6 | 00000 | QE |
| 32 | MR | 10msec | 04F8 | 00000 | DE |
| 33 | MR | 10 msec | 0000 | 000]b | 00 |
| 34 | MR | 20msec | 03B6 | 00000 | QE |
| 35 | MH | 20 msec | DOED | 00000 | 00 |

### 12.3.3. Communication Section

Find the problem in the table shown below, and refer to the corresponding troubleshooting procedure in Defective Facsimile Section (P.114).

| No | Symptom | Reference Content | Possible cause |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | The paper is not fed properly when faxing. (Not in the copy mode.) | Transmit Problem (P.114) | Problem with the feeding mechanism. <br> Refer to ADF (Auto Document <br> Feed) Section (P.128). |
| 2 | The fax usually transmits successfully but sometimes fails. <br> (The unit can copy documents.) | Sometime There is a Transmit Problem (P.115) | Problem with the service line or with the receiver's fax. |
| 3 | The fax usually receives successfully but sometimes fails. <br> (The unit can copy documents.) | Receive Problem (P.116) | Problem with the service line or with the transmitter's fax. |
| 4 | The fax completely fails to transmit or receive. (The unit can copy documents.) | The Unit can copy, but cannot Transmit / Receive (P.117) | Problem with the electric circuit. |
| 5 | The fax fails either to transmit or receive when making a long distance or an international call. <br> (The unit can copy documents.) | The unit can copy, but cannot either transmit/receive long distance or international communications (P.118) | Problem with the service line. |
| 6 | The fax image is poor when transmitting or receiving during a long distance or an international call. | The unit can copy, but the transmission and reception image are incorrect (P.120) |  |
| 7 | No.1~No. 5 | - The troubleshooting procedure for each error code will be printed on the communication result report. <br> - Error Messages-Report (P.100) |  |

### 12.3.3.1. Defective Facsimile Section

### 12.3.3.1.1. Transmit Problem



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Operation Panel Section (P.156)
(*2): ADF (Auto Document Feed) Section (P.128)
(*3): Maintenance (P.205)
(*4): How to Remove the Gear Block and Separation Roller (P.180)
(*5): How to Remove the Operation Board, MIC Board and LCD (P.189)

### 12.3.3.1.2. Sometime There is a Transmit Problem



Note:
"596: Transmit level set" represents a service code. (Refer to Service Function Table (P.88).)

### 12.3.3.1.3. Receive Problem

First confirm whether the recording paper is installed properly or not before starting troubleshooting. (Refer to "Remarks".)


## Note:

- "596: Transmit level set" represents a service code. (Refer to Service Function Table (P.88).)
- \#06 : Refer to for Program Mode Table (P.123) Fax ring count.


## Remarks:

Regarding the reception problem, we have investigated the conceivable causes in the flow chart except for the software-related errors. However, some troubles may occur due to the software-related problems such as "OUT OF PAPER" when the fax switches to the memory receiving mode and the memory capacity becomes full of the unprintable data. In this case, error messages [MEMORY FULL] and its main cause, for example "CHECK PAPER" are displayed on the LCD. Once you solve the main problem, [MEMORY FULL] will be cancelled and the reception problem will be resolved.
LCD display messages indicating the error causes are shown below.
CHECK PAPER
COVER OPEN
UNIT OVERHEATED (COVER OPEN, etc.)...Reset the unit.

## PAPER JAMMED

## CHECK FILM

Please refer to Error Messages-Display (P.97) for the above items. If it turns out to be a hardware deformity, please check each sensor. (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).)

### 12.3.3.1.4. The Unit can copy, but cannot Transmit / Receive



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Test Mode (P.77)
(*2): Analog Board Section (P.148)

### 12.3.3.1.5. The unit can copy, but cannot either transmit/receive long distance or international communications

The following two causes can be considered for this symptom.

## Cause 1:

The other party is executing automatic dialing, the call has been received by this unit, and the CED or DIS signal response time is too long. (In most cases, this unit detects the CNG signal and can respond to CED or DIS.) (According to the ITU-T standard, the communication procedure is cancelled when there is no response from the other party within 35 sec , so that the other party releases the line.)
(Response Time)


Other party's FAX
machine dials

## (Cause and Countermeasure)

As shown in the chart above, the total handshaking time must be reduced, but because of the long distance connection and linking of several stations, the line connection time cannot be reduced. Accordingly, the following countermeasures should be tried. (A)... As the 35 sec . count is started directly after dialing or directly after the START button has been pressed for models with a START button, the other party should be called manually, if possible. Another possibility is entering two pauses at the end of the auto dial number on the transmission side. Then the count start time can be delayed for 2 pauses (about 10 sec.).

## Cause 2:

Erroneous detection because of an echo or an echo canceler.


## (Echo/Echo Canceler)

The signal from FAX1 reaches FAX2 via stations 1 and 2, but the reflection signal at station 2 also returns via station 1 (echo). As the distance between station 1 and station 2 is far, the echo returns to FAX 1 at a max of 600 msec after transmission. There is a possibility that this signal is detected erroneously as the signal from FAX2. For a normal call, there is also a possibility that the echo of their own voice will make the call difficult to understand. For this reason, each station (station 1 and station 2) attaches echo cancelers (S1 and S2) for international lines or long distance lines. For the echo canceler, the level of the transmission signal from FAX 1 is compared with the level of the reception signal from FAX2. When the transmission signal is larger, S 1 is closed while S2 is opened when it is smaller. In other words, for transmission from FAX1, S1 is closed and S2 is open, so that the echo does not return to FAX1.

## (Causes and Countermeasures)

| No. | Countermeasure Side | Echo Communication Problem Example | Countermeasure | Service Code |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Sending side | Some time is needed to compare the level of the receiving and sending signals for the echo canceler. The header of the training signal lacks due to a switching delay to close S1. | Add a dummy signal to the beginning of the training signal. | Service code (521) (International mode select) This countermeasure becomes the default value. |
| 2 | Receiving side | The echo canceler function stops according to a CED signal frequency of 2100 Hz (S1 and S 2 are both ON), a DIS signal is returned as an echo, and a DCS signal from the sending side overlaps the DIS echo. Then the receiving side FAX cannot retrieve the DCS signal. <br> (Refer to Fig. a) | Change to a 1100 Hz CED signal frequency. (Refer to Fig. b) | Service code (520) (CED frequency select) |
|  | Receiving side |  | Change the regular rime of 75 msec between the CED signal and DIS signal to 500 msec . This will give at least 250 msec to recover the echo canceler operation. (Refer to Fig. c) | Service code (593) (Time between CED and 300 bps) |
|  | Sending side |  | The sending side FAX sends a DCS signal not after receiving the 1st DIS signal but after receiving the 2nd DIS signal. (Refer to Fig. d) | Service code (594) (Overseas DIS detection select) |
| 3 | Sending side | Communication failure occurs in a long distance communication on the telephone line without an echo canceler. or | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Decrease the transmission level from - } \\ & 10 \mathrm{dBm} \text { to }-15 \mathrm{dBm} \text { and the echo level } \\ & \text { will decrease. } \end{aligned}$ | Service code (596) (Transmit level set) |
| 4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Sending side } \\ & \text { Receiving side } \end{aligned}$ |  | Decrease the receiving sensitivity from -13 dBm to about -32 dBm so an echo signal will not received. | Service code (598) (Receiving sensitivity) |
| 5 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Sending side } \\ & \text { Receiving side } \end{aligned}$ | There are some cases (e.g. Mobil comms.) which cause the collision of TX / RX signals due to the delay / echo and noise of the network / terminal. (Refer to Fig. e) | Set additional Pause time (Service mode: code No. 774) in between the original and its repeated signals, to prevent the collision of the signals at both end. | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Service code (774) } \\ & \text { (T4 timer) } \end{aligned}$ |



Fig. a
(Overlapping the Echo of the DIS signal and DCS signal)


Fig. b
(Countermeasure by Changing the CED Frequency)


Fig. c
(Countermeasure by Changing the Interval Between CED and DIS)


Fig. d
(Countermeasure by Ignoring the 1st DIS)

| <TX side signal> | <RX side signal> | <Countermeasure> |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2nd / 3rd DCS / Training | \& delayed CFR / FTT | at TX side |
| 2nd / 3rd EOP / EOM / MPS | \& delayed MCF / PIP / PIN / RTP / RTN | at TX side |
| delayed DCS | \& 2nd / 3rd / --- DIS | at RX side |


(Fig. e)

### 12.3.3.1.6. The unit can copy, but the transmission and reception image are incorrect

(Long distance or international communication operation)

This symptom highly depends on the transmission and reception capability of the other FAX unit and the line conditions.
The countermeasures for this unit are shown below.

## Transmission Operation:

Set the transmitting speed to 4800BPS (service mode: code No. 717 ) or select the overseas mode.

## Reception Operation:

If $80 \%$ or more of the reception is incorrect, set the receiving speed to 4800BPS. (Service mode: code No. 718)

- Refer to Service Function Table (P.88).


### 12.3.3.1.7. How To Record Fax Signal by Using PC

Recording FAX signal is one of the useful analysis measures to solve communication problems
The way of recording easily by using PC is shown as follows.

## 1. Equipment

- 1 jig
- 1 PC (with LINE IN)
- 1 audio cord (mini jack supported)
- 2 tel cords

| Parts No. | Parts Name \& Descrip- tion | Qt'y |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PQJJ1T004Z | JACK1, JACK2 | 2 |
| PQJJ1D010Z | PIN JACK | 1 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { ECQE2155KF } \\ & \text { or } \\ & \text { ECQE2E155KC } \end{aligned}$ | CAPACITOR | 2 |
| MA4020 | DIODE | 2 |

2. Setting up


FAX SIGNAL RECORDING JIG
3. Connecting PC and JIG


## 4. PC setting and recording

1. Set LINE IN to be valid in the volume control setting.

Refer to the PC instruction book.
2. Start up the PC software "SOUND RECORDER". (This software is bundled to Windows OS, which can create WAV file.) Set the audio format " PCM 22.050 kHz , 8bit, mono".
3. Click the record button and start recording after acquisition the signal.

## Note:

- Not to be wind wave patterns on the wave monitor.
- Please compress the recording data when you send attaching to E-Mail because the data size will be so heavy.
- Any software which can create WAV files is available.


### 12.4. Remote Programming

If, after the call is connected, the customer describes the situation and it is determined that the problem can be corrected by making parameter changes, this function makes it possible to change parameters such as the user code and service code from another fax (using DTMF tones). Therefore, travel to the customer's location is not required. However, it is not possible to change all the parameters remotely (Program Mode Table (P.123)). The function used to accomplish this is remote programming.

First, in order to check the current status of the service code parameter, print out the setup list (code: 991) and the service list (code: 999) from the customer's fax machine.
Based on this, the parameters for the desired codes can be changed.
The procedure for changing and listing parameters is described on Entering the Remote Programming Mode and Changing
Service Codes (P.122). Also, before exiting the remote programming mode, it is advisable to obtain a new list to confirm that the changes were made correctly.

## Hint:

Since the connected telephone is in use during the remote programming mode, it may be helpful to ask the customer to switch to the speakerphone. This frees the customer from the need to remain right next to the fax while you are making parameter settings. When finished, inform the customer. Also note that in very noisy locations where the DTMF tones are not audible, the remote programming function will not work.

### 12.4.1. Entering the Remote Programming Mode and Changing Service Codes



[^1]Obtain a list (991: Set up list, 999: Service list) to confirm that the changes were made correctly.

To quit the remote programming mode, ask the customer (the call should still be connected) to press the [STOP] key to return the machine to the normal mode. Then hang up the phone.

## Note:

(*1): Refer to Program Mode Table (P.123)
12.4.2. Program Mode Table

| Code | Function | Set Value | Default | Remote Setting |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 001 | Set date and time | mm/dd/yy hh:mm | Jan/01/2006 | NG |
| 002 | Your logo | --------- | None | NG |
| 003 | Your FAX number | --- | None | NG |
| 004 | Print sending report | 1:ERROR / 2:ON / 3:OFF | ERROR | OK |
| 006 | FAX ring count | 1~9 | 2 | OK |
|  | TAM/FAX ring count | 2~7 / 0:TOLL SAVER | 2 | OK |
| 010 | Recording time | 1:GREETING ONLY / 2: 1 MIN 3: $2 \mathrm{MIN} / 4: 3 \mathrm{MIN}$ | 3 MIN | OK |
| 011 | Remote TAM ID | --------- | $\mathrm{ID}=11$ | NG |
| 013 | Dialing mode | 1:PULSE / 2:TONE | TONE | OK |
| 017 | Ringer tone | TONE 1 / TONE 2 / TONE 3 | TONE 1 | NG |
| 022 | Journal auto print | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 023 | Overseas mode | 1:NEXT FAX / 2:ERROR / 3:OFF | ERROR | OK |
| 025 | Delayed transmission | ON / OFF | OFF | NG |
| 026 | Auto caller ID list | 1:ON / 2:OFF | OFF | OK |
| 034 | Quick scan | 1:ON / 2:OFF | OFF | OK |
| 036 | RCV reduction | 1:92\% / 2:86\% / 3:72\% / 4:100\% | 92\% | OK |
| 039 | LCD contrast | NORMAL / DARKER | NORMAL | NG |
| 041 | FAX activation code | ON / OFF | ON ID=**9 | NG |
| 044 | Memory receive alert | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 046 | Friendly reception | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 047 | FAX voice guidance | 1:ERROR / 2:ON / 3:OFF | ON | OK |
| 049 | Auto disconnect | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON CODE = * 0 | OK |
| 054 | Greeting MSG. REC. time | 1:16s / 2:60s | 16s | OK |
| 058 | Scan contrast | 1: Normal / 2: Light / 3: Darker | Normal | OK |
| 059 | Copy phone book | 1 ITME / ALL ITEM | 1 ITEM | NG |
| 067 | ICM monitor | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 072 | Set flash mode | $1: 90 \mathrm{~ms} / 2: 100 \mathrm{~ms} / 3: 110 \mathrm{~ms} / 4: 250 \mathrm{~ms}$ $5: 300 \mathrm{~ms} / 6: 400 \mathrm{~ms} / 7: 600 \mathrm{~ms} / 8: 700 \mathrm{~ms}$ | 700ms | OK |
| 076 | Connecting tone | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 077 | Auto answer mode | 2: FAX Only / 3:TAM/FAX | TAM/FAX | OK |
| 080 | Set default | YES / NO | NO | NG |
| 501 | Pause time set | 001~600 x 100msec | $035 \times 100 \mathrm{msec}$ | OK |
| 503 | Dial speed | 1:10pps / 2:20 pps | 10pps | OK |
| 510 | Vox time | 1:6sec / 2:4sec | 6sec | OK |
| 511 | Vox sense | 1:High / 2:Low | High | OK |
| 514 | Bell detection time | $1 \sim 9 \times 100 \mathrm{msec}$ | $6 \times 100 \mathrm{msec}$ | OK |
| 520 | CED frequency select | $1: 2100 \mathrm{~Hz} / 2: 1100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 2100 Hz | OK |
| 521 | International mode select | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 522 | Auto standby select | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 523 | Receive equalizer select | 1:0km / 2:1.8km / 3:3.6km / 4:7.2km | 0km | OK |
| 524 | Transmission equalizer select | 1:0km / 2:1.8km / 3:3.6km / 4:7.2km | 0km | OK |
| 544 | Document feed position adjustment value set | 1~9 | 5 | OK |
| 550 | Memory clear | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 551 | ROM check | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 552 | DTMF signal tone test | 1:ON / 2:OFF | OFF | OK |
| 553 | Monitor on FAX communication | 1:OFF / 2:Phase B / 3:ALL | OFF | OK |
| 554 | Modem test | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 555 | Scanner test | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 556 | Motor test | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 557 | LED test | ------- | --------- | NG |
| 558 | LCD test | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 559 | Document jam detection | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 561 | Key test | --------- | ------- | NG |
| 567 | T0 timer | 1~255 s | 046s | OK |
| 570 | Break \% select | 1:61\% / 2:67\% | 61\% | OK |
| 571 | ITS auto redial time set | 00~99 | 5 | OK |
| 572 | ITS auto redial line disconnection time set | 001~999sec | 065sec | OK |


| Code | Function | Set Value | Default | Remote Setting |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 573 | Remote turn-on ring number | 01~99 | 10 | OK |
| 574 | Dial tone detect check | 1:ON / 2:OFF | OFF | OK |
| 580 | TAM continuous tone detection | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 590 | FAX auto redial time set | 00~99 | 05 | OK |
| 591 | FAX auto redial line disconnection time set | 001~999sec | 065sec | OK |
| 592 | CNG transmit select | 1:OFF / 2:ALL / 3:AUTO | ALL | OK |
| 593 | Time between CED and 300 bps | 1:75ms / 2:500ms / 3:1sec | 75ms | OK |
| 594 | Overseas DIS detection | 1:1st / 2:2nd | 1st | OK |
| 595 | Receive error limit value | 1:5\% / 2:10\% / 3:15\% / 4:20\% | 10\% | OK |
| 596 | Transmit level set | -15~00dbm | -10dbm | OK |
| 598*1 | Receiving Sensitivity | -20~-48dbm | -40dbm | OK |
| 710 | Memory clear except history data | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 717 | Transmit speed select | 1:9600/ 2:7200/3:4800/ 4:2400 | 9600bps | OK |
| 718 | Receive speed select | 1:9600/ 2:7200/3:4800/ 4:2400 | 9600bps | OK |
| 722 | Redial tone detect | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 745 | Power on film feed | 1:ON / 2:OFF | ON | OK |
| 763 | CNG detect time for friendly reception | 1:10s / 2:20s / 3:30s | 30s | OK |
| 773 | DIS-DCS interval | 1:500msec / 2:200msec | 200 ms | OK |
| 774 | T4 timer | 00~99 x 100ms | 00ms | OK |
| 784 | Voice prompt | 1:Start | ----- | NG |
| 815 | Sensor \& VOX test | ---- | --------- | NG |
| 841 | Digital SP-Phone RX \& TX check | 1:SP-Phone | --------- | NG |
| 852 | Print test pattern | --------- | ----- | NG |
| 853 | Top margin | 1~9 mm | 5 | OK |
| 861 | Paper size | 1:A4 / 2:Letter | A4 | OK |
| 874 | DTMF ON time | 06~20 $\times 10 \mathrm{msec}$ | $18 \times 10 \mathrm{msec}$ | OK |
| 875 | DTMF OFF time | 06~20 $\times 10 \mathrm{msec}$ | $09 \times 10 \mathrm{msec}$ | OK |
| 880 | History list | 1:Start | --------- | NG |
| 881 | Journal 2 | 1:Start | --------- | NG |
| 882 | Journal 3 | 1:Start | --------- | NG |
| 958 | Cordless test mode | --------- | --------- | NG |
| 991 | Remote Setup list | 1:Start | ----- | OK |
| 994 | Remote Journal list | 1:Start | --------- | OK |
| 995 | Remote Journal 2 list | 1:Start | --------- | OK |
| 996 | Remote Journal 3 list | 1:Start | --------- | OK |
| 998 | Remote History list | 1:Start | --------- | OK |
| 999 | Remote Service list | 1:Start | --------- | OK |

OK means "can set".
NG means "can not set".

## Note:

- *1 : Power is OFF/ON after changing this set value.
- Refer to Service Function Table (P.88) for descriptions of the individual codes.


## Example:

If you want to set value in the "004 Print confirmation report", press the dial key number 1,2 or 3 corresponding to the Set Value you want to select. (1:ERROR / 2:ON / 3:OFF)

### 12.5. Troubleshooting Details

### 12.5.1. Outline

Troubleshooting is for recovering quality and reliability by determining the broken component and replacing, adjusting or cleaning it as required. First, determine the problem then decide the troubleshooting method. If you have difficulty finding the broken part, determine which board is broken. (For example: the Digital PCB, Analog PCB, etc.) The claim tag from a customer or dealer may use different expressions for the same problem, as they are not a technician or engineer. Using your experience, test the problem area corresponding to the claim. Also, returns from a customer or dealer often have a claim tag. For these cases as well, you need to determine the problem. Test the unit using the simple check list on Simple Check List (P.127). Difficult problems may be hard to determine, so repeated testing is necessary.

### 12.5.2. Starting Troubleshooting

Determine the symptom and the troubleshooting method.


## REFERENCE

(*1): Error Messages-Display (P.97)
(*2): Simple Check List (P.127)
(*3): Power Supply Board Section (P.153)
(*4): Digital Board Section (P.141)

### 12.5.3. Troubleshooting Items Table

| ITEM | SYMPTOM | REFERENCE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ADF <br> (Auto Document Feeder) | The document does not feed. | See No Document Feed (P.128) |
|  | Document jam | See Document Jam (P.129) |
|  | Multiple feed | See Multiple Document Feed (P.130) |
|  | Skew | See Document Skew (P.131) |
| Recording paper feed | The recording paper does not feed. | See The Recording Paper does not Feed (P.132) |
|  | Paper jam | See Paper Jam (P.133) |
|  | Multiple feed and skew | See Recording Paper Multiple Feed and Skew (P.134) |
| Printing | The sent fax data is skewed. | See The Sent Fax Data is Skewed (P.134) |
|  | The received fax data is skewed. | See The Received Fax Data is Skewed (P.134) |
|  | The received or copied data is expanded. | See Received or Copied Data is Expanded (P.135) |
|  | A black page is copied. | See A Blank Page is Copied (P.136) |
|  | A blank page is received. | See A Blank Page is Received (P.138) |
|  | Black or white vertical line | See Black or White Vertical Line (P.138) |
|  | Black or white lateral line on print out | See Black or White Lateral Line on Print Out (P.139) |
|  | An abnormal image is printed | See An Abnormal Image is Printed (P.140) |
| Communication FAX, TEL <br> (Analog board) | Cannot communicate by fax. An error code is displayed. | See Communication Section (P.113) and Journal Report (P.100) |
|  | Cannot talk. <br> The DTMF tone doesn't work. <br> The handset / monitor doesn't work, etc. | See Analog Board Section (P.148) |
| Operation panel | Keys are not accepted. | See Operation Panel Section (P.156) |
| Sensor | If the electric circuit is the cause, the error message corresponding to the sensor will be displayed. | See Sensor Section (P.157) |
| Cordless (Digital board) | No link | See Check Link (P.162) |
|  | Battery won't charge | See Battery won't Charge (Digital, Interface, Analog Board) (P.161) and Battery won't Charge (Handset) (P.161) |
|  | No voice reception | See No Voice Reception (P.161) |
|  | No voice transmission | See No Voice Transmission (P.162) |

12.5.3.1. Simple Check List

| SERIAL NO. |  | DATE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | FUNCTION | JUDGEMENT | REFERENCE |
| FAX operation | Transmission | OK / NG |  |
|  | Receiving | OK / NG |  |
| Copy operation |  | OK / NG |  |
| Telephone operation | Handset transceiver / receiver | OK / NG |  |
|  | SP-PHONE sound | OK / NG |  |
|  | Ringer sound | OK / NG |  |
|  | Dial operation | OK / NG |  |
|  | Volume operation | OK / NG |  |
|  | VOX detection | OK / NG | Service code \#815 <br> (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).) |
| Operation Panel | Key check | OK / NG | Service code \#561 <br> (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).) |
|  | LED check | OK / NG | Service code \#557 <br> (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).) |
|  | LCD check | OK / NG | Service code \#558 <br> (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).) |
| Sensor | Sensor check | OK / NG | Service code \#815 <br> (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).) |
| Clock | Display changing | OK / NG | Is the time kept correctly? Check with another clock. |
| Digital TAM | Greeting REC / PLAY | OK / NG |  |
|  | Incoming message REC / PLAY | OK / NG |  |
|  | Memo REC / PLAY | OK / NG |  |
| Voice prompt |  | OK / NG | Service code \#784 <br> (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).) <br> Check whether voice prompt is play or not. |
| Cordless Operation | Portable handset | OK / NG |  |
|  | Link | OK / NG |  |
|  | Battery charge | OK / NG |  |

### 12.5.4. ADF (Auto Document Feed) Section

### 12.5.4.1. No Document Feed



## REFERENCE:

(*1): How to Remove the Separation Holder and Exit Roller (P.190)
(*2): Installation Position of the Lead Wires (P.191)
(*3): How to Remove the Gear Block and Separation Roller (P.180)
(*4): Test Mode (P.77)
(*5): How to Remove the Gears, Motors and Arms of the Gear Block (P.181)
(*6): Stepping Motor Drive Circuit (P.27)
(*7): Digital Board Section (P.141)
(*8): Sensor Section (P.157)
(*9): Power Supply Board Section (P.153)

### 12.5.4.2. Document Jam



## REFERENCE

(*1): Disassembly and Assembly Instructions (P.170)
(*2): Test Mode (P.77)
(*3): How to Remove the Separation Holder and Exit Roller (P.190)
(*4): Sensor Section (P.157)

### 12.5.4.3. Multiple Document Feed

- When using thick paper etc., sometimes the document will not be fed. (*1)

Check the separation roller. (*2) Confirm whether the roller is dirty or not and is attached correctly. (*3)


## REFERENCE:

(*1): Installing the Recording Paper (P.72)
(*2): How to Remove the Gear Block and Separation Roller (P.180)
(*3): Disassembly and Assembly Instructions (P.170)
(*4): How to Remove the Separation Holder and Exit Roller (P.190)
(*5): Maintenance (P.205)

## Note:

When confirming if the characters are extended or distorted, or if the feed problem is occurred, use this test chart format. (Refer to Test Chart (P.225).)

### 12.5.4.4. Document Skew



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Maintenance Check Items/Component Locations (P.205)
(*2): Disassembly and Assembly Instructions (P.170)
(*3): How to Remove the Image Sensor (CIS) (P.174)
(*4): Overview (P.65)
(*5): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.

### 12.5.4.5. The Recording Paper does not Feed

When setting the recording paper, confirm if the paper is set correctly. (*1)


## REFERENCE:

(*1): Installing the Recording Paper (P.72)
(*2): How to Remove the Pickup Roller and Antenna (P.187)
(*3): Power Supply Board Section (P.153)
(*4): Test Mode (P.77)
(*5): How to Remove the P.C. Boards and Speaker (P.178)
(*6): How to Remove the Gears, Motors and Arms of the Gear Block (P.181)
(*7): How to Remove the Platen Roller and Lock Lever (P.185)
(*8): Digital Board Section (P.141)
(*9): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.

### 12.5.4.6. Paper Jam



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Jams (P.214)
(*2): Maintenance Check Items/Component Locations (P.205)
(*3): Disassembly and Assembly Instructions(P.170)
(*4): Test Mode (P.77)
(*5): Sensors and Switches (P.29)
(*6): How to Remove the Pickup Roller and Antenna (P.187)

### 12.5.4.7. Recording Paper Multiple Feed and Skew



## REFERENCE:

(*1): How to Remove the Platen Roller and Lock Lever (P.185)
(*2): How to Remove the Pickup Roller and Antenna (P.187)

### 12.5.4.8. The Sent Fax Data is Skewed



## REFERENCE:

(*1): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.
(*2): Document Skew (P.131)

### 12.5.4.9. The Received Fax Data is Skewed



## REFERENCE:

(*1): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.
(*2): Recording Paper Multiple Feed and Skew (P.134)

### 12.5.4.10. Received or Copied Data is Expanded



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Document feeder/recording paper feeder/scanner glass cleaning (P.215)
(*2): Disassembly and Assembly Instructions (P.170)
(*3): How to Remove the Separation Holder and Exit Roller (P.190)
(*4): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.

### 12.5.4.11. A Blank Page is Copied



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Test Mode (P.77)
(*2): Thermal Head (P.24)
(*3): How to Remove the Thermal Head (P.175)
(*4): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.
(*5): A Blank Page is Received (P.138)
(From the previous)


### 12.5.4.12. A Blank Page is Received



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Test Mode (P.77)
(*2): Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148)
(*3): A Blank Page is Copied (P.136)

### 12.5.4.13. Black or White Vertical Line



## REFERENCE:

(*1): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.
(*2): Maintenance Check Items/Component Locations (P.205)
(*3): Document feeder/recording paper feeder/scanner glass cleaning (P.215)
(*4): Thermal Head Cleaning (P.217)
(*5): How to Remove the Thermal Head (P.175)

### 12.5.4.14. Black or White Lateral Line on Print Out



REFERENCE:
(*1): Test Mode (P.77)
(*2): How to Remove the Gears, Motors and Arms of the Gear Block (P.181)
(*3): Installation Position of the Lead Wires (P.191)
(*4): Disassembly and Assembly Instructions (P.170)
(*5): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.
(*6): A Blank Page is Copied (P.136)
(*7): Digital Board Section (P.141)

### 12.5.4.15. An Abnormal Image is Printed



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Test Mode (P.77)
(*2): Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148)
(*3): How to Remove the Thermal Head (P.175)
(*4): We recommend making a copy of the test chart in Test Chart (P.225) and using it.

### 12.5.5. Digital Board Section

When the unit fails to boot up the system, take the troubleshooting procedures very carefully. It may have a serious problem. The symptom: No response when the power is turned on. (No LCD display, and keys are not accepted.)
The first step is to check the power source. If there is no problem with the power supply unit, the problem may lie in the digital unit (main board).
As there are many potential causes in this case (ASIC, DRAM, etc.), it may be difficult to specify what you should check first. If a mistake is made in the order of checks, a normal part may be determined faulty, wasting both time and money.
Although the tendency is to regard the problem as a serious one (IC malfunction, etc.), usually most cases are caused by solder faults (poor contact due to a tunnel in the solder, signal short circuit due to solder waste).


## Note:

1. Electrical continuity may have existed at the factory check, but a faulty contact occurred as a result of vibration, etc., during transport.
2. Solder waste remaining on the board may get caught under the IC during transport, causing a short circuit.

Before we begin mass production, several hundred trial units are produced at the plant, various tests are applied and any malfunctions are analyzed. (In past experiences, digital IC (especially DRAM and FLASH ROM) malfunctions are extremely rare after installation in the product.)
This may be repaired by replacing the IC, (DRAM etc.). However, the real cause may not have been an IC malfunction but a soldering fault instead.
Soldering faults difficult to detect with the naked eye are common, particularly for ASIC and RA (Resistor Array). But if you have an oscilloscope, you can easily determine the problem site or IC malfunction by checking the main signal lines.
Even if you don't have such a measuring instrument, by checking each main signal line and resoldering it, in many cases the problem will be resolved.
An explanation of the main signals (for booting up the unit) is presented below.
Don't replace ICs or stop repairing until checking the signal lines.
An IC malfunction rarely occurs. (By understanding the necessary signals for booting up the unit, the "Not Boot up" display is not a serious problem.)

## What are the main signals for booting up the unit?

Please refer to Digital Block Diagram (P.142).
The ASIC (IC501) controls all the other digital ICs. When the power is turned on, the ASIC retrieves the operation code stored in the FLASH ROM (IC502), then follows the instructions for controlling each IC. All ICs have some inner registers that are assigned to a certain address.
It is the address bus by which the ASIC designates the location inside each IC. And the data bus reads or writes the data in order to transmit the instructions from the ASIC to the ICs.
These signal lines are all controlled by voltages of $3.3 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{H})$ or $0 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{~L})$.

### 12.5.5.1. Digital Block Diagram

You also need to check the signal lines listed here [List 1] when the unit fails to boot up the system. Those signal lines should remain normal. Other signal lines are not directly related to that failure even if they have faults or troubles.
[List 1]
(1) D0~D7 (Data Bus)
(2) $\mathrm{AO} \sim \mathrm{A} 15$ (Address Bus)
(3) $\overline{\mathrm{RD}} \quad$ (Read Signal)
$\overline{\text { ROMCS }} \quad$ (ROM Select Signal)
$\overline{\text { WR }} \quad$ (Write Signal)
(4) RBA0~RBA5 (Bank Address Signal)
(5) $\overline{R A S}$
(DRAM Row Address Strobe Signal)
$\overline{\mathrm{CAS}} \quad$ (DRAM Column Address Strobe Signal)
(6) $\overline{\text { MDMCS }}$ (Modem Select Signal)

As long as these signals remain normal, once the power is turned on, each IC can repeatedly output $3.3 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{H})$ and $0 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{~L})$. The following shows NG and normal wave patterns.

## NG Wave pattern



Note:
Refer to NG Example (P.147).

## Normal Wave Patterns

(1)
D0~D7
200ns/div, 1V/div

(2)

(3) $\overline{\mathrm{RD}}$
$100 \mathrm{~ns} / \mathrm{div}, 1 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{div}$

(3)
ROMCS
400ns/div, 1V/div

(5) $\overline{R A S}, \overline{C A S}$


## Remarks:

When you use an oscilloscope to judge whether a signal to be tested is normal or NG, perform the signal check in exactly the same order as in [List 1]. (If the ASIC fails to access the FLASH ROM, the ASIC cannot access DRAM normally.)
The digital circuit actually operates according to the timing combinations of these signals. If the timing of these signals is even slightly delayed, the circuit will not work. Nor will it if the IC is defective and the output voltage level is not normal although the timing of these signals is accurate enough to meet the specifications. (Make sure that your oscilloscope is calibrated before starting a test.)
Therefore, it is imperative to confirm whether each IC outputs the signal at the correct level. (See the I/O Pin No. Diagram.) The signal level should be constantly output at between $3.3 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{H})$ and $0 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{~L})$ as described earlier.

## Note:

Simply check the output level and make sure if the IC repeatedly outputs the signal at between $3.3 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{H})$ and $0 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{~L})$.

## I/O and Pin No. Diagram



After the power is turned on, the ASIC initializes and checks each IC.
The ROM, DRAM, and modem are checked.
If initialization fails for the ICs, the system will not boot up.
In this case, please find the cause as follows.

(C) Constant 3.3 V
(106, 111, 114 pin$)$

[4] Check each signal line. (A) WDERR


## REFERENCE:

NG Example (P.147)
Power Supply Board Section (P.153)


Other NG example while the power is ON and the LCD displays the following.

LCD display


This display occurs when the temperature of the thermistor on the terminal head is NG.
Faulty connection of the thermal head connector.

ASIC IC501 pins 4 and 139 or the thermistor on the thermal head is NG.

### 12.5.5.2. NG Example

1. 



Short circuit from the adjacent signal wires.
Check for a short circuit in the IC leads and the signal wire at the through hole.

2.


### 12.5.6. Analog Board Section

This chapter provides the testing procedures required for the analog parts. A signal route to be tested is determined depending upon purposes. For example, the handset TX route begins at the handset microphone and the signal is output to the telephone line. The signal mainly flowing on this route is analog. You can trace the signal with an oscilloscope. The signal flow on each route is shown in the Check Sheet here. If you find a specific problem in the unit, for example if you cannot communicate with the H/S, trace that signal route locally with the following Check Sheet and locate the faulty point.

### 12.5.6.1. Check Sheet for Signal Route



| (SYMPTOM) |
| :--- |
| ITEMS TO CHECK |
| Portable Handset |
| Tx |

## ■RF Part Signal Route



## Note:

\{ \}: Inside the Digital board
【】Inside the Handset board
Nothing: Inside the Analog board

### 12.5.6.2. Defective ITS (Integrated Telephone System) Section

## 1. No handset transmission / reception and no monitor reception

Perform a signal test in the ITS or the NCU section and locate a defective point (where the signal disappears) on each route between the handset microphone and telephone line (sending), or between the telephone line and the handset speaker (receiving), or between the microphone and the telephone line (sending), or between the telephone line and the speaker (receiving). Check the components at that point. Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148) is useful for this investigation.

## 2. No pulse dialing


3. No ring tone (or No bell)

4. No tone dialing

Does a DTMF signal appear at pin 69 of IC701?


Following the NCU section and ITS section, search for the point where the signal disappears on the route between pin 69 of IC701and the telephone jack and check the components at that point. (DTMF for TEL LINE: Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route.)

## REFERENCE:

Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148)

## REFERENCE:

Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148)
NCU Section (P.42)

### 12.5.7. Digital Speakerphone

The digital speakerphone has different features from the analog speakerphone
The analog speakerphone switches between $T x$ or $R x$. Either $T x$ or $R x$ is able to pass through a telephone line or speaker, depending on the Tx and Rx signal (voice) level. The higher-level signal (either TX or RX) can pass through the route.
Therefore, you never hear the other party's voice while you are talking. However, the digital speakerphone allows you to hear the other party's voice while you are talking. So both Tx and Rx are active at the same time. There is also a difference in the troubleshooting procedures between the two types.

At the start of communication, during the initial 2~3 correspondences, the digital speakerphone performs half-duplex operation, alternating between transmission (Tx) and reception (Rx). Then duplex communication becomes available.
Learning occurs during the initial 2~3 correspondences in order to set the appropriate parameters for duplex communication.


You cannot check the digital speaker phone by the signal route test mentioned in the Analog Board Section because the level is always changing as stated above.

Therefore, there is a service function for this troubleshooting. In this service mode, you can set the mute to either Tx or Rx. Then you can check the signal route of the speaker phone Tx or the speaker phone Rx without any disturbances.

## HOW TO USE THE \＃841 SERVICE FUNCTION for THE DIGITAL SPEAKER PHONE

Please check by using the service function（【\＃】，［9］【0】【0】【0】【＊】，［8】【4】【1】）
Connect a phone line，simulator or PBX．


Don＇t input a dial tone（call progress tone）to the telephone line at this time．


Note：
Check to the SP－Phone Rx／Tx signal routes．（Refer to Check Sheet for Signal Route（P．148））．

### 12.5.8. Power Supply Board Section

### 12.5.8.1. Key Components for Troubleshooting

Check the following parts first: F101, D101-D104, C106, Q101and IC101.
This comes from our experience with experimental tests. For example: power supply and lightning surge voltage test, withstanding voltage test, intentional short circuit test, etc.

## Caution:

If you find a melted fuse in the unit, do not turn on the power until you locate and repair the faulty parts (except for the fuse); otherwise the fuse will melt again and you cannot pinpoint the faulty point.

In most cases, the symptom is that nothing is output. It is more likely that the fault is in the primary side rather than the secondary side. Check the primary side first.

POWER SUPPLY BLOCK DIAGRAM


### 12.5.8.2. Troubleshooting Flow Chart




### 12.5.8.3. Broken Parts Repair Details

(D101, D102, D103, D104)
Check for a short-circuit in terminal 4. If D101, D102, D103 and D104 are short-circuits, F101 will melt (open). In this case, replace all of the parts (D101, D102, D103, D104, F101).
(Q101)
The worst case of Q101 is a short-circuit between the Drain and Gate because damage expands to the peripheral circuit of Q101.
This is due to a very high voltage through the Gate circuit which is composed of R110, R112, D107 and IC101.
You should change all of the parts listed as follows.
F101, Q101, R110, R112, D107, IC101
(D201)
If D201 is broken, the oscillation circuit in the power supply cannot operate. Check it with an electric tester.

### 12.5.9. Operation Panel Section

### 12.5.9.1. No Key Operation



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Test Mode (P.77)

### 12.5.9.2. No LCD Indication



## REFERENCE:

(*1): Test Mode (P.77)
(*2): How to Remove the Operation Board, MIC Board and LCD (P.189)

### 12.5.10. Sensor Section

Refer to Sensors and Switches (P.29) for the circuit descriptions
The Test Function makes the sensor circuit check easier. (Refer to Test Mode (P.77).)
For example, as for "FILM END/COVER OPEN SENSOR", "CO" is turned ON/OFF on the display when you open or close the cover. Also, document sensor, read position sensor, recording paper sensor are turned ON/OFF by the copy operation. Therefore, each sensor can be checked for proper mechanical operation.
As for the electric check, check whether each voltage is right or not with following flowchart turning each sensor lever ON/OFF manually.
12.5.10.1. Check the Document Top Sensor (SW351), "REMOVE DOCUMENT"

12.5.10.2. Check the Document Set Sensor (SW352).
"CHECK DOCUMENT"

12.5.10.3. Check the Cover Open Sensor (SW1001) "COVER OPEN"

12.5.10.4. Check the Paper Top Sensor (SW1001) $\qquad$ "PAPER JAMMED"


### 12.5.10.5. Check the Film End Sensor (SW1003)

 ."CHECK FILM"
12.5.10.6. Check the Motor Position Sensor (SW1004). "CALL SERVICE2"


### 12.5.11. CIS (Contact Image Sensor) Section



## Note:

-(*1): Test Mode (P.77)

- Refer to Scanning Block(P.26).


### 12.5.12. Thermal Head Section



## Note:

Refer to Thermal Head (P.24).

### 12.5.13. Cordless Section

### 12.5.13.1. Battery won't <br> Charge (Digital, Interface, Analog Board)


12.5.13.2. Battery won't Charge (Handset)


### 12.5.13.3. No Voice Reception

## BASE UNIT

| Input $1.1 \mathrm{kHz} /-25 \mathrm{dBm}$ to <br> TEL line and push TALK <br> of HANDSET, then check <br> if the signal is output from |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Y864. | Check pin 57 of IC801 <br> signal to RF unit. |
| Check the "Portable <br> Handset Rx signal route". (*1) |  |

## HANDSET

Check the speaker of
Handset.


## REFERENCE:

(*1): Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

## KX-FG2452CX

### 12.5.13.4. No Voice Transmission

HANDSET


BASE UNIT


## REFERENCE:

(*1): Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

### 12.5.14. Check Link

## BASE UNIT



## REFERENCE:

Flash Memory is IC601.
DSP is IC501.
(*1): Refer to Finding out the Defective Part (P.163).

HANDSET


## REFERENCE:

(*1): Check the RF Part (P.163).

### 12.5.15. Check the RF Part

### 12.5.15.1. Finding out the Defective Part

1. Prepare Regular HS (*1) and Regular BU (*2).
a. Re-register regular HS (Normal mode) to Base unit (to be checked).

If this operation fails in some ways, the Base Unit is defective.
b. Re-register Handset (to be checked) to regular BU (Normal mode) If this operation fails in some ways, the Handset is defective.

## After All the Checking or Repairing

1. Re-register the checked Handset to the checked Base Unit, and Regular HS to Regular BU.


## Note:

(*1) HS: Handset
(*2) BU: Base Unit

### 12.5.15.1.1. Re-registering the Cordless Handset

## Important

- Make sure the base unit and the cordless handset are near each other and not being used.

1. Cordless Handset:

Press [MENU] $\rightarrow$ [0] [0]

- The rest of the procedure must be completed within 1 minute.

2. Base unit:

Press and hold [LOCATOR].
3. Cordless Handset:

Press [OK], then wait until the cordless handset beeps.

### 12.5.15.1.2. RF Check Flowchart

Each item ( $1 \sim 6$ ) of RF Check Flowchart corresponds to Check Table for RF Part (P.165).
Please refer to the each item.

12.5.15.1.3. Check Table for RF Part

| No. | Item | BU (Base Unit) Check | HS (HandSet) Check |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Link Confirmation Normal <br> HS, BU Mode [Normal Mode] | 1. Register Regular HS to BU (to be checked). <br> 2. Press [Talk] key of the Regular HS to establish link. | 1. Register HS (to be checked) to Regular BU. <br> 2. Press [Talk] key of the HS to establish link. |
| 2 | Control signal confirmation <br> HS, BU Mode: [Test Burst Mode] (*1) | Check DSP interface. (*2) | Check DSP interface. (*2) |
| 3 | X'tal Frequency confirmation HS, BU Mode: [Adjustment] (*3) | Check RF Frequency at 45 CH in TX-CW mode. ( $2439,966797 \mathrm{MHz} \pm 50 \mathrm{KHz}$ ) | Check X'tal Frequency. $\text { (13.824000MHz } \pm 100 \mathrm{~Hz})$ |
| 4 | TX Power confirmation <br> Regular HS, BU Mode: [RX-CW Mode.] (*4) HS, BU (to be checked) Mode: [Test Burst Mode.] (*1) | 1. Place the Regular HS about 15 cm away from the BU. <br> 2. Confirm that RSSI of the Regular HS is approximately 2 V by Oscilloscope. (*5) | 1. Place the HS about 15 cm away from the Regular BU. <br> 2. Confirm that RSSI of the Regular BU is approximately 2 V by Oscilloscope. (* 6 ) |
| 5 | RX Sensitivity confirmation <br> Regular HS, BU Mode: <br> [Test Burst Mode.] (*1) <br> HS, BU (to be checked) Mode: <br> [RX-CW Mode.] (*4) | 1. Place the Regular HS about 15 cm away from the BU. <br> 2. Confirm that RSSI of the BU is approximately 2 V by Oscilloscope. (*5) | 1. Place the HS about 15 cm away from the Regular BU. <br> 2. Confirm that RSSI of the HS is approximately 2 V by Oscilloscope. (*6) |
| 6 | Range Confirmation Normal HS, BU Mode: [Normal Mode] | 1. Register Regular HS to BU (to be checked). <br> 2. Press [Talk] key of the Regular HS to establish link. <br> 3. Compare the range of the BU (being checked) with that of the Regular BU. | 1. Register HS (to be checked) to Regular BU. <br> 2. Press [Talk] key of the HS to establish link. <br> 3. Compare the range of the HS (being checked) with that of the Regular HS. |

Note:
(*1)(*3)(*4): Test Mode (P.77)
(*2): RF-DSP Interface Signal Wave Form (P.167)
(*5): Cordless Base Reference Drawing (P.202)
(*6): Handset Reference Drawing (P.203)

### 12.5.15.1.4. Test Range Check

Circuit block which range is defective can be found by the following check.

| Item | BU (Base Unit) Check | HS (HandSet) Check |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Range Confirmation TX TEST (TX Power check) <br> HS, BU Mode: <br> [Test Link Mode] (*1) | 1. Register Regular HS to BU (to be checked). <br> 2. Set BU to "Test Link mode". <br> 3. Set Regular HS to "Test Link mode". <br> *Set TX Power and RX Sensitivity of the BU and the Regular HS by CHART1. <br> * At distance of about 20 m between HS and BU, Link OK = TX Power of the BU is OK. <br> No Link = TX Power of the BU is NG. | 1. Register HS (to be checked) to Regular BU. <br> 2. Set Regular BU to "Test Link mode". <br> 3. Set HS to "Test Link mode". <br> *Set TX Power and RX Sensitivity of the HS and the Regular BU by CHART1. <br> * At distance of about 20 m between HS and BU , Link OK = TX Power of the HS is OK. <br> No Link = TX Power of the HS is NG. |
| Range Confirmation RX TEST (RX sensitivity check) <br> HS, BU Mode: <br> [Test Link Mode] (*1) | 1. Register Regular HS to BU (to be checked). <br> 2. Set BU to "Test Link mode". <br> 3. Set Regular HS to "Test Link mode". <br> *Set TX Power and RX Sensitivity of the BU and Regular HS by CHART1. <br> * At distance of about 20 m between HS and BU , <br> Link OK= RX Sensitivity of the BU is OK. <br> No Link = RX Sensitivity of the BU is NG. | 1. Register HS (to be checked) to Regular BU. <br> 2. Set Regular BU to "Test Link mode". <br> 3. Set HS to "Test Link mode". <br> * Set TX Power and RX Sensitivity of Checking_HS and Regular_BU by CHART1. <br> * At distance of about 20 m between HS and BU , Link OK= RX Sensitivity of the HS is OK. <br> No Link = RX Sensitivity of the HS is NG |

CHART1: Setting of TX Power and RX Sensitivity in Range Confirmation TX TEST, RX TEST

|  | BU (to be checked) |  | Regular_HS |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | TX Power | RX Sens. | TX Power | RX Sens. |
| BU (Base Unit) TX Power Check | High | High | High | Low |
| BU (Base Unit) RX Sensitivity Check | High | High | Low | High |


|  | HS (to be checked) |  | Regular_BU |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | TX Power | RX Sens. | TX Power | RX Sens. |
| HS (Handset) TX Power Check | High | High | High | Low |
| HS (Handset) RX Sensitivity Check | High | High | Low | High |

## Note:

(*1): Test Mode (P.77)
12.5.15.1.5. RF-DSP Interface Signal Wave Form

< Test Burst mode >


### 12.5.15.2. Check Handset Transmission



## REFERENCE:

Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

### 12.5.15.3. Check Handset Reception

Check Speaker of HANDSET.

Check HANDSET Rx in Check Sheet for Signal Route.

## REFERENCE:

Check Sheet for Signal Route (P.148).

## Note:

When checking the RF UNIT, Refer to Check the RF Part (P.163)

### 12.5.15.4. Check Caller ID

BASE UNIT


## REFERENCE:

Bell Detection Circuit (P.42)
Calling Line Identification Circuit (FSK) (P.44)

Note:

- Make sure the format of the Caller ID or Call Waiting Caller ID service of the Telephone company that the customer subscribed to.
- Also we recommend to confirm that the customer is really a subscriber of the service.


## 13 Service Fixture \& Tools



## 14 Disassembly and Assembly Instructions

Please remove the Paper Support Spring, Paper Tray and Ink Film before disassembling.


### 14.1. General Section



### 14.2. Disassembly Flowchart

### 14.2.1. Upper Cabinet Section



## REFERENCE:

A-1: How to Remove the Image Sensor (CIS) (P.174)
A-2: How to Remove the Thermal Head (P.175)

### 14.2.2. Lower Cabinet Section



## REFERENCE

B-1: How to Remove the Bottom Frame (P.177)
B-2: How to Remove the P.C. Boards and Speaker (P.178)
B-3: How to Remove the Power Supply Board and AC Cord (P.179)
B-4: How to Remove the Gear Block and Separation Roller (P.180)
B-5: How to Remove the Gears, Motors and Arms of the Gear Block (P.181)
B-6: How to Remove the Charger Case (P.183)

### 14.2.3. Back Cover Section



## REFERENCE:

C-1: How to Remove the Back Cover (P.184)
C-2: How to Remove the Platen Roller and Lock Lever (P.185)
C-3: How to Remove the Pickup Roller and Antenna (P.187)

### 14.2.4. Operation Panel Section



## REFERENCE

D-1: How to Remove the Operation Panel (P.188)
D-2: How to Remove the Operation Board, MIC Board and LCD (P.189)
D-3: How to Remove the Separation Holder and Exit Roller (P.190)

### 14.2.5. Handset Section



## REFERENCE

E-1: How to Remove the Handset Board (P.197)

### 14.3. Disassembly Procedure

### 14.3.1. How to Remove the Image Sensor (CIS)

## PROCEDURE: A-1

Ref. No. A-1

IMAGE SENSOR

1) Push the Green Button to open the Operation Panel and Back Cover.
2) Remove the 2 screws (D).
3) Remove the IMAGE SENSOR from the Main Cabinet, as shown in a Fig. A.
4) Disconnect the Connector.

## DOCUMENT SUB ROLLER

1) Push the Green Button to open the Operation Panel and Back Cover.
2) Remove the DOCUMENT SUB ROLLER, as shown in a Fig. $B$.


Tip of spring


Fig. E

### 14.3.2. How to Remove the Thermal Head

## PROCEDURE: A-2

Ref. No. A-2 (1)

1) Push the Green Button to open the Operation Panel and Back Cover.
2) Release the both-side hooks of Thermal Head Holder from Main Cabinet. (Refer to next page.) Remove the holder from thermal head after releasing this stopper. (Fig. C)
3) Disconnect the Connectors.
4) Remove the THERMAL HEAD.

## Note for Assembly:

-When springs are inserted in the Main Cabinet, be careful in the direction of springs. (See Fig. D)


Ref. No. A-2 (2)
(1) Push the left side hook first, as shown in a figure.

CORRECT


INCORRECT


SIDE VIEW

(3) Push the rignt side hook, as shown in a figure. The both side hooks release from Main Cabinet.

CORRECT


I NCORRECT

14.3.3. How to Remove the Bottom Frame

## PROCEDURE: B-1

Ref. No. B-1

1) Remove the 8 screws (F) and 1 screw (B).
2) Remove the BOTTOM FRAME.

## Note for Assembly:

- Fasten (1), (2) and (3) screws first. (Order is (1) $\rightarrow$ (2) $\rightarrow$ (3).)
-When Bottom Frame is installed in the Main Cabinet, be careful not to run aground into the bosses.



### 14.3.4. How to Remove the P.C. Boards and Speaker

PROCEDURE: B-1 $\rightarrow \mathrm{B}-2$

Ref. No. B-2

## ANALOG BOARD

1) Remove the 1 screw (F)-a.
2) Disconnect the Connector on the Analog Board.
3) Remove the ANALOG BOARD.

## INTERFACE BOARD

1) Remove the 1 screw (F)-b.
2) Disconnect the Connectors on the Interface Board.
3) Remove the INTERFACE BOARD.

## DIGITAL BOARD

1) Remove the Analog Board.
2) Remove the Interface Board.
3) Remove the 1 screw (F)-c.
4) Disconnect the Connectors on the Digital Board.
5) Unsolder the Antenna lead wire. (See Fig. E)
6) Release the hooks of the Main Cabinet.
7) Remove the DIGITAL BOARD.

## FILM END SENSOR BOARD

1) Remove the Analog Board.
2) Remove the Interface Board.
3) Remove the Digital Board.
4) Remove the 2 screws (F)-d.
5) Disconnect the Connectors on the Film End Sensor Board.
6) Remove the FILM END SENSOR BOARD.

## SENSOR BOARD

1) Remove the Analog Board.
2) Remove the 2 screws (F)-e.
3) Remove the SENSOR BOARD.

## SPEAKER

1) Remove the Analog Board.
2) Remove the 1 screw (F)-f.
3) Remove the SPEAKER.

14.3.5. How to Remove the Power Supply Board and AC Cord

PROCEDURE: B-1 $\rightarrow$ B-2 $\rightarrow$ B-3

Ref. No. B-3

1) Remove the Analog Board. (Refer to B-2.)
2) Remove the 2 screws (F). (See Fig. F)
3) Remove the Power Supply Board with AC Cord from Main Cabinet.
4) Remove the 1 screw (B).
5) Unsolder the Point-B. (See Fig. G)
6) Remove the POWER SUPPLY BOARD and AC CORD.


## The soldering of AC Cord



### 14.3.6. How to Remove the Gear Block and Separation Roller

PROCEDURE: B-1 $\rightarrow \mathrm{B}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-4$
Ref. No. B-4

1) Remove the Interface Board. (Refer to B-2.)
2) Remove the 3 screws (F).
3) Open the Operation Panel. (See Fig. H)
4) Remove the GEAR BLOCK.
5) Release the hook, as shown in a Fig. J.


Fig. H

### 14.3.7. How to Remove the Gears, Motors and Arms of the Gear Block

PROCEDURE: $\mathrm{B}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-4 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-5$


Ref. No. B-5 (2)
12) Remove the Gear-c.
13) Remove the Spring-b.
14) Remove the Gear-d.
15) Remove the Ratchet and Gear-e.
16) Remove the Gear (Torque Limitter).
17) Remove the Gear-f.
18) Remove the Gear-g and Gear-h.
19) Remove the Gear-j.
20) Remove the Gear-k.
21) Remove the Gear-m.
22) Remove the Gear-n.
23) Remove the Gear-p.
24) Remove the Gear-r.
25) Remove the Gear-s.
26) Remove the Gear-t.


### 14.3.8. How to Remove the Charger Case

## PROCEDURE: B-1 $\rightarrow$ B-6

Ref. No. B-6

1) Remove the 3 screws (F)-a.
2) Remove the Terminal Holder.
3) Remove the 1 screw (F)-b.
4) Release the Stopper from Main Cabinet, as shown in a Fig. K.
5) Remove the CHARGER CASE.


### 14.3.9. How to Remove the Back Cover

PROCEDURE: $\mathrm{B}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{C}-1$

Ref. No. C-1

1) Unsolder the Antenna lead wire on the Digital Board. (Refer to B-2.)
2) Push the Green Button to open the Operation Panel and Back Cover.
3) Remove the 1 screw (A).
4) Remove the Spring.
5) Remove the BACK COVER.

14.3.10. How to Remove the Platen Roller and Lock Lever

## PROCEDURE: $\mathrm{B}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{C}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{C}-2$

Ref. No. C-2 (1)

1) Release the Spacer, as shown in a Fig. L.
2) Release the hook of Gear-a, as shown in a Fig. M.
3) Remove the Gear-a.
4) Remove the PLATEN ROLLER.
5) Remove the 2 screws (A).
6) Remove the Base Chassis after release the 5 hooks-a.
release
(Lower Side View)
Holder


Ref. No. C-2 (2)
7) Remove the Spring.
8) Remove the LOCK LEVER after release the 2 hooks-b.
9) Release the hook of Gear-b, as shown in a Fig. N.
10) Remove the Gear-b.
11) Remove the Discharge Roller.
12) Remove the Paper Separation Holder.

## Note for Assembly 1:

- When Base Chassis is inserted in the Cover, be careful of the insertion of Recording paper spring. (See Fig. P)

14.3.11. How to Remove the Pickup Roller and Antenna


## PROCEDURE: $\mathrm{B}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{C}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{C}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{C}-3$

Ref. No. C-3

## PICK UP ROLLER

1) Remove the PICK UP ROLLER.

## ANTENNA

1) Remove the 1 screw (C).
2) Remove the ANTENNA.


- Hook a Antenna lead wire on the rib, as shown in a figure.


### 14.3.12. How to Remove the Operation Panel

PROCEDURE: B-1 $\rightarrow$ B-2 $\rightarrow$ D-1

Ref. No. D-1

1) Disconnect the Operation lead wire and Mic lead wire on the Digital Board. (Refer to B-2.) And remove the Core on the Operation lead wire.
2) Open the Operation Panel.
3) Release the both Arms, as shown in a Fig. Q.
4) Release the Earth Spring from the Main Cabinet certainly.
5) Remove the OPERATION PANEL from Main Cabinet.


Note for Assembly:
Insert the Lead Wires and Earth Spring, as shown in a figure.


Note for Assembly: Install the Operation Panel in the Main Cabinet as a Earth Spring hangs on boss.


Fig. Q

### 14.3.13. How to Remove the Operation Board, MIC Board and LCD

PROCEDURE: $\mathrm{B}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{D}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{D}-2$

Ref. No. D-2

1) Remove the 3 screws (F)-a.
2) Release the 2 hooks-a.
3) Remove the Cover.
4) Release the 5 hooks-b.
5) Disconnect the Connector.
6) Remove the OPERATION BOARD from Operation Panel.
7) Release the 2 hooks-c.
8) Remove the LCD from Operation Panel.
9) Unsolder the Lead wires.
10) Remove the 1 screw (F)-b.
11) Unsolder the MIC lead wires
12) Remove the MIC BOARD.


### 14.3.14. How to Remove the Separation Holder and Exit Roller

PROCEDURE: $\mathrm{B}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}-2 \rightarrow \mathrm{D}-1 \rightarrow \mathrm{D}-3$

Ref. No. D-3

## SEPARATION HOLDER

1) Release the hook. (See Fig. R)
2) Remove the Document Feed Support. (See Fig. R)
3) Remove the SEPARATION HOLDER.

## EXIT ROLLER

1) Pull out the Gear from Exit Roller.
2) Remove the EXIT ROLLER.

## Caution:

Be careful not to deform the Earth Spring.

14.3.15. Installation Position of the Lead Wires
14.3.15.1. Lower Section


- The Image sensor lead wire should not run on the cabinet.


- Head lead wire should


## be passed between the rib.




### 14.3.15.3. Back Cover Section


14.3.16. How to Remove the Handset Board

## PROCEDURE: E-1

Ref. No. E-1

1) Remove the Battery Cover.
2) Remove the Battery.
3) Remove the 2 screws (G)-a.
4) Remove the Cabinet Cover. (See Fig. S)
5) Remove the Tapes and Solders.
6) Remove the 3 screws (G)-b.
7) Remove the Charge Terminals.
8) Remove the Handset Board.


Fig. S

### 14.3.16.1. How to Replace the Handset LCD

(1)


Remove the tape, and then peel off the FFC of LCD in the direction of the arrow not to damage the foil on the P.C. Board.
(2)


Fit the Heatseal of a New LCD to the P.C. Board.
(3)


Heatweld with the Tip of Soldering Iron about 5 to 10 seconds (in case of 60W soldering iron).
(4)


Stick the Tape* over the FFC.

* Use the Tape which was removed first.

Vertical Interval
Tolerance
Tolerance Horizontal Interval is less than 0.2 mm , it is o.k.


OK

NG
(Inclined)

## NG

(Vertical interval tolerance is more than 0.2 mm .)


## NG

(Horizontal interval tolerance is more than 0.2 mm .)

## 15 Measurements and Adjustments

## 15．1．Things to Do after Replacing IC

## 15．1．1．X201（Handset RF）Check

Equipment：Frequency counter
Check Point for measurement：BCK（Handset）
Checking tolerance： $13.824 \mathrm{MHz} \pm 100 \mathrm{~Hz}$（Handset）

## 15．1．1．1．Check and Adjust X201（Handset RF）Frequency

1．Set DC power supply to 2.6 V ．
2．Set up Handset in TEST mode（Adjustment flow）．
3．Press［1］key to Adjust Crystal mode．（＂Clock Adj＂is displayed on LCD）
＊Check BCK frequency．
4．If the BCK frequency is out of the checking tolerance（ $\pm 100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ），adjust to Adjustment tolelance（ $\pm 30 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ）by pressing［ $\mathbf{\Delta}$ ］or［ $\mathbf{v}$ ］ key．
Adjustment Tolerance： $13.824 \mathrm{MHz} \pm 30 \mathrm{~Hz}$
5．Press［TALK］key to write the new frequency factor in EEPROM．
6．Turn the power off．Then this value is available．
When you have replaced IC201 and IC241，adjust X201 by the procedure above．
Cross Reference：
Adjustment Mode Flow Chart for Handset（P．201）

## 15．1．1．2．X801（Base RF Check）

Equipment：Frequency counter
Check Point for measurement：BCK（Base）
Checking tolerance： $13.824 \mathrm{MHz} \pm 100 \mathrm{~Hz}$（Base）

## 15．1．1．3．Check and Adjust X801（Base RF）Frequency

1．Set up Base Unit in TEST mode．（CORDLESS TEST）
2．Press［SET］key and select＂3．SND Data mode＂by pressing［7］key．
3．Press the［SET］key 2 times．
Adjustment Tolerance： $13.824 \mathrm{MHz} \pm 30 \mathrm{~Hz}$
4．If the BCK frequency is out of the checking tolerance（ $\pm 100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ），adjust to Adjustment tolelance（ $\pm 30 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ）by follows；

Adjustment tolerance $( \pm 30 \mathrm{~Hz})$
1．Press the【MUTE】Key．

2．Press the【HELP】 Key 2 times．

LCD

```
4RC A8 3 0 01
```

4RC A8 3001
\#98 FRQ = 25

Adjust the frequency by pressing number with number key or $[\boldsymbol{\nabla} \boldsymbol{V} \mathbf{(} \boldsymbol{\Delta}$ key．
Note：Need to press［SET］key to set the frequency．
Adjustment Tolerance ： $13.824 \mathrm{MHz} \pm 30 \mathrm{~Hz}$
3．Turn the power off．Then this value is available．

When you have replaced IC801 and IC805，adjust X801 by the procedure above．

### 15.1.2. Adjust Battery Low Detector Voltage (Handset)

After Handset's DSP (IC201) or EEPROM (IC202) replacement, Re-writing Battery Low voltage to EEPROM is required. With following Handset Adjustment Flow, adjust DC power supply and DC voltmeter by the procedure below.

1. Set DC power supply to 2.6 V .
2. Set up Handset in TEST mode (Adjustment flow).
3. Press [1] key and [OFF] key to Adjust Batt Low mode. ("Bat Adj" is displayed on LCD)
4. Change the voltage of the DC power supply to 2.3 V accurately.

* Check the voltage at P.C. board pads because some voltage drops occur due to the usage of long or thin cables.

5. Press [TALK] key to write voltage value in EEPROM.
6. Turn the power off. Then this value is available.

## Note:

Refer to Handset Reference Drawing (P.203) for connection of DC power supply and voltmeter.

## Cross Reference:

Adjustment Mode Flow Chart for Handset (P.201)

### 15.1.3. Adjustment Mode Flow Chart for Handset



## Cross Reference

(*1) Adjust Battery Low Detector Voltage (Handset) (P.200)
Note:
(*2) These are the default values.
(*3) These values may not be fixed depending on the battery strength.
(*4) Refer to the table below if using Spectrum Analyzer for checking.

|  | BCK | TEST MODE Frequency 1 Channel <br> (at Antenna) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 13.824 MHz | $\rightarrow$ | 2400.724512 MHz |
| Adjustment Tolerance | $\pm 30 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\rightarrow$ | $\pm 5.20 \mathrm{kHz}$ |
| Checking Tolerance | $\pm 100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\rightarrow$ | $\pm 17.36 \mathrm{kHz}$ |

### 15.2. Cordless Base Reference Drawing

When connection the Simulator and Equipment for checking, please refer to below.

(Digital Board: Bottom View)

Note: (*1) is referred to No. 3 of Check Table for RF Part (P.165)

### 15.3. Handset Reference Drawing

When connecting the Simulator and Equipment for checking, please refer to the illustration below.


Note: (*1) is referred to No. 3 of Check Table for RF Part (P.165)

### 15.4. Frequency Table

| Channel | TX/RX Frequency (MHz) | TEST MODE Frequency $(\mathrm{MHz})$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 2400.914355 | 2400.724512 |
| 2 | 2401.808203 | 2401.618359 |
| 3 | 2402.698096 | 2402.508252 |
| 4 | 2403.591943 | 2403.402100 |
| 5 | 2404.481836 | 2404.291992 |
| 6 | 2405.375684 | 2405.185840 |
| 7 | 2406.265576 | 2406.075732 |
| 8 | 2407.159424 | 2406.969580 |
| 9 | 2408.049316 | 2407.859473 |
| 10 | 2408.943164 | 2408.753320 |
| 11 | 2409.833057 | 2409.643213 |
| 12 | 2410.726904 | 2410.537061 |
| 13 | 2411.616797 | 2411.426953 |
| 14 | 2412.510645 | 2412.320801 |
| 15 | 2413.400537 | 2413.210693 |
| 16 | 2414.294385 | 2414.104541 |
| 17 | 2415.184277 | 2414.994434 |
| 18 | 2416.078125 | 2415.888281 |
| 19 | 2416.968018 | 2416.778174 |
| 20 | 2417.861865 | 2417.672021 |
| 21 | 2418.751758 | 2418.561914 |
| 22 | 2419.645605 | 2419.455762 |
| 23 | 2420.535498 | 2420.345654 |
| 24 | 2421.429346 | 2421.239502 |
| 25 | 2422.319238 | 2422.129395 |
| 26 | 2423.213086 | 2423.023242 |
| 27 | 2424.102979 | 2423.913135 |
| 28 | 2424.996826 | 2424.806982 |
| 29 | 2425.886719 | 2425.696875 |
| 30 | 2426.780566 | 2426.590723 |
| 31 | 2427.670459 | 2427.480615 |
| 32 | 2428.564307 | 2428.374463 |
| 33 | 2429.454199 | 2429.264355 |
| 34 | 2430.348047 | 2430.158203 |
| 35 | 2431.237939 | 2431.048096 |
| 36 | 2432.131787 | 2431.941943 |
| 37 | 2433.021680 | 2432.831836 |
| 38 | 2433.915527 | 2433.725684 |
| 39 | 2434.805420 | 2434.615576 |
| 40 | 2435.699268 | 2435.509424 |
| 41 | 2436.589160 | 2436.399316 |
| 42 | 2437.483008 | 2437.293164 |
| 43 | 2438.372900 | 2438.183057 |
| 44 | 2439.266748 | 2439.076904 |
| 45 | 2440.156641 | 2439.966797 |
| 46 | 2441.050488 | 2440.860645 |
| 47 | 2441.940381 | 2441.750537 |
| 48 | 2442.834229 | 2442.644385 |
| 49 | 2443.724121 | 2443.534277 |
| 50 | 2444.617969 | 2444.428125 |


| Channel | TX/RX Frequency (MHz) | TEST MODE Frequency (MHz) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 51 | 2445.507861 | 2445.318018 |
| 52 | 2446.401709 | 2446.211865 |
| 53 | 2447.291602 | 2447.101758 |
| 54 | 2448.185449 | 2447.995605 |
| 55 | 2449.075342 | 2448.885498 |
| 56 | 2449.969189 | 2449.779346 |
| 57 | 2450.859082 | 2450.669238 |
| 58 | 2451.752930 | 2451.563086 |
| 59 | 2452.642822 | 2452.452979 |
| 60 | 2453.536670 | 2453.346826 |
| 61 | 2454.426563 | 2454.236719 |
| 62 | 2455.320410 | 2455.130566 |
| 63 | 2456.210303 | 2456.020459 |
| 64 | 2457.104150 | 2456.914307 |
| 65 | 2457.994043 | 2457.804199 |
| 66 | 2458.887891 | 2458.698047 |
| 67 | 2459.777783 | 2459.587939 |
| 68 | 2460.671631 | 2460.481787 |
| 69 | 2461.561523 | 2461.371680 |
| 70 | 2462.455371 | 2462.265527 |
| 71 | 2463.345264 | 2463.155420 |
| 72 | 2464.239111 | 2464.049268 |
| 73 | 2465.129004 | 2464.939160 |
| 74 | 2466.022852 | 2465.833008 |
| 75 | 2466.912744 | 2466.722900 |
| 76 | 2467.806592 | 2467.616748 |
| 77 | 2468.696484 | 2468.506641 |
| 78 | 2469.590332 | 2469.400488 |
| 79 | 2470.480225 | 2470.290381 |
| 80 | 2471.374072 | 2471.184229 |
| 81 | 2472.263965 | 2472.074121 |
| 82 | 2473.157813 | 2472.967969 |
| 83 | 2474.047705 | 2473.857861 |
| 84 | 2474.941553 | 2474.751709 |
| 85 | 2475.831445 | 2475.641602 |
| 86 | 2476.725293 | 2476.535449 |
| 87 | 2477.615186 | 2477.425342 |
| 88 | 2478.509033 | 2478.319189 |
| 89 | 2479.398926 | 2479.209082 |
| 90 | 2480.292773 | 2480.102930 |

## 16 Maintenance

### 16.1. Maintenance Items and Component Locations

### 16.1.1. Outline

Maintenance and repairs are reformed using the following steps.

## 1. Periodic maintenance

Inspect the equipment periodically and if necessary, clean any contaminated parts
2. Check for breakdowns

Look for problems and consider how they arose.
If the equipment can be still used, perform copying, self testing or communication testing.
3. Check equipment

Perform copying, self testing and communication testing to determine if the problem originates from the transmitter, receiver or the telephone line.

## 4. Determine causes

Determine the causes of the equipment problem by troubleshooting.
5. Equipment repairs

Repair or replace the defective parts and take appropriate measures at this stage to ensure that the problem will not recur
6. Confirm normal operation of the equipment

After completing the repairs, conduct copying, self testing and communication testing to confirm that the equipment operates normally.

## 7. Record keeping

Make a record of the measures taken to rectify the problem for future reference

### 16.1.2. Maintenance Check Items/Component Locations



### 16.1.2.1. Maintenance List

| No. | OPERATION | CHECK | REMARKS |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Document Path | Remove any foreign matter such as paper. | - |
| 2 | Rollers | If the roller is dirty, clean it with a damp cloth then dry thor- <br> oughly. | Refer to Document feeder/recording paper <br> feeder/scanner glass cleaning (P.215). |
| 3 | Platen Roller | If the platen is dirty, clean it with a damp cloth then dry <br> thoroughly. Remove the paper and film cartridge before <br> cleaning. | - |
| 4 | Thermal Head | If the thermal head is dirty, clean the printing surface with a <br> cloth moistened with denatured alcohol (alcohol without <br> water), then dry thoroughly. | Refer to Thermal Head Cleaning (P.217). |
| 5 | Sensors | Document top sensor (SW351), Document set sensor <br> (SW352), Cover open sensor (SW1001), Paper top sensor <br> (SW1001), Film detection sensor (SW1002), Film end sen- <br> sor (SW1003) . Confirm the operation of the sensors. | See Maintenance Check Items/Component <br> Locations (P.205) and How to Remove the P.C. <br> Boards and Speaker (P.178). |
| 6 | Glass | If the glass is dirty, clean them with a dry soft cloth. | Refer to Document feeder/recording paper <br> feeder/scanner glass cleaning (P.215). |
| 7 | Abnormal, wear and tear <br> or loose parts | Replace the part. Check if the screws are tight on all parts. |  |

### 16.1.2.2. Maintenance Cycle

| No. | Item | Cleaning Cycle | Replacement |  |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | Cycle | Procedure |
| 1 | Separation Roller (Ref. No. 145)*2 | 3 months | 7 years *1 (31,500 documents) | Refer to How to Remove the Gear Block and <br> Separation Roller (P.180). |
| 2 | Separation Rubber (Ref. No. 13) | 3 months | 7 years (31,500 documents) |  | | Refer to Document feeder/recording paper |
| :--- |
| feeder/scanner glass cleaning (P.215). |

Note:
*1 These values are standard and may vary depending on usage conditions.
${ }^{* 2}$ Refer to Cabinet, Mechanical and Electrical Parts Location (P.252).

### 16.2. Gear Section

This model provides a motor-driven gear mechanism for transmitting/copying documents and printing fax data. In this chapter, you will see how the gears work to select and operate a mode and how the gear section, sensors and rollers mechanically work during the main operations (FAX transmission, FAX reception and Copy).

### 16.2.1. Mode Selection

When a motor with Drive Motor Gear attached rotates clockwise (CW), Swing Gear E engages CAM Gear to rotate clockwise (CW). This operation provide five mode options (A: Transmit mode, B: Paper-Pickup mode, C: Assist mode D: Receive mode and E: Copy mode) selected by the Sensor Switch. (The Sensor Switch Lever's position in the CAM Gear controlled by the software selects a specific mode.) You can see which mode is selected by confirming the Mode Marker's position as shown in Fig. 1.
(Ex. If the Mode Marker is in position A, a transmit mode is selected.)


Fig. 1: Mode Selection

### 16.2.2. Mode Operation

Once a mode is selected, the Drive Motor Gear rotates counterclockwise (CCW) and then the controlling positions of Swing Gears A, B and C, D, E determine which gears convey their drive power in each mode. See "Sensor Location" in Sensors and
Switches (P.29).
A. Transmit mode (See Fig. A.):

The Swing Gear A engages with the next gear to drive Document Separation Roller and Document Exit Roller.
The Swing Gear $C$ engages with the next gear to drive Paper Exit Roller.


Fig. A: Transmit mode

## B. Paper-Pickup mode (See Fig. B)

The Swing Gear $C$ engages with the next gear to drive Paper Exit Roller.
The Swing Gear D engages with the next gear to drive Pickup Roller.


Fig. B: Paper-Pickup mode

## C. Assist mode (See Fig. C.):

The Swing Gear D engages with the next gear to drive Pickup Roller.
The Swing Gear B engages with the next gear to drive Platen Roller gear and Ribbon Drive Gear.
The Swing Gear C engages with the next gear to drive Paper Exit Roller Gear.


Fig. C: Assist mode

## D. Receive mode (See Fig. D.):

The Swing Gear B engages with the next gear to drive Platen Roller gear and Ribbon Drive Gear.
The Swing Gear C engages with the next gear to drive Paper Exit Roller Gear.


Fig. D: Receive mode

## E. Copy mode (See Fig. E.):

"Copy mode" = "Transmit mode" + "Receive mode"
The Swing Gear A engages with the next gear to drive Document Separation Roller and Document Exit Roller.
The Swing Gear B engages with the next gear to drive Platen Roller gear and Ribbon Drive Gear
The Swing Gear C engages with the next gear to drive Paper Exit Roller.


Fig. E: Copy mode

### 16.2.3. Mechanical Movements in the Main Operations (transmitting documents, receiving faxes and copying)

16.2.3.1. Idle Status


Note:

- See "Sensor Locations" in Sensors and Switches (P.29).
- CW......clockwise
- CCW....counterclockwise


### 16.2.3.2. Transmitting Documents



## REFERENCE:

Sensor Section (P.157).

### 16.2.3.3. Receiving Fax

Is the recording paper installed into the paper cassette properly?


## Note:

See "Sensor Locations" in Sensors and Switches (P.29).
16.2.3.4. Copying
(a) Document detection
(b) Pre-feeding documents
(c) Feeding recording paper Feeding document paper
(d) Copying
(e) Ejecting recording paper
(f) Ejecting documents


[^2]
### 16.3. Jams

### 16.3.1. Recording Paper Jams

### 16.3.1.1. When the recording paper has jammed in the unit

The display will show the following.


## Important:

- Remove the recording paper, then remove the paper tray beforehand, otherwise the paper may misfeed or jam.


1. Open the front cover ((1)), push the green lever ((2)), then open the back cover (③).

2. Remove the jammed recording paper (4)).

3. Turn the gear of the blue core ((5)) in the direction of the arrow until the ink film is tight (6) and at least one layer of ink film is wrapped around the blue core ( 7 ).


## Correct



Incorrect


4. Close the back cover securely by pushing down on the dotted area at both ends (8)), then close the front cover securely (9).

5. Install the paper tray, then insert the recording paper gen-
tly.
(See Installing the Paper Tray (P.71) and Installing the Recording Paper (P.72))

### 16.3.1.2. When the recording paper was not fed into the unit properly

The display will show the following.

```
CHECK PAPER
```

Remove the recording paper and straighten. Insert the paper, then press [SET] to clear the message.


### 16.3.2. Document Jams - sending

1. Open the front cover. Remove the jammed document carefully (①).

2. Close the front cover securely.

Note:

- Do not pull out the jammed paper forcibly before opening the front cover.


### 16.4. Cleaning

### 16.4.1. Document feeder/recording paper feeder/scanner glass cleaning

Clean the document feeder/scanner glass when:

- Documents or recording paper frequently misfeed.
- Smudges or black/white lines appear on the original document when sending or copying.
Important:
- Remove the recording paper, then remove the paper tray beforehand, otherwise the paper may misfeed or jam.


1. Disconnect the power cord and the telephone line cord.
2. Open the front cover ((1)), push the green lever ((2)), then open the back cover ((3)).

3. Clean the document feeder rollers (4)) and rubber flap ( (5)) with a cloth moistened with isopropyl rubbing alcohol, and let all parts dry thoroughly. Clean the scanner glass ( (6) with a soft, dry cloth.

## Caution:

- Do not use paper products, such as paper towels or tissues.


4. Clean the recording paper feeder roller (7) with a cloth moistened with isopropyl rubbing alcohol, and let all parts dry thoroughly.

5. Close the back cover securely by pushing down on the dotted area at both ends (8)), then close the front cover securely (9).

6. Install the paper tray, then insert the recording paper gently.
(See Installing the Paper Tray (P.71) and Installing the Recording Paper (P.72))
7. Connect the power cord and the telephone line cord.

### 16.4.2. Thermal Head Cleaning

If smudges or black/white lines appear on a copied/received document, check whether there is dust on the thermal head. Clean the thermal head to remove the dust.

## Important:

Remove the recording paper, then remove the paper tray beforehand, otherwise the paper may misfeed or jam.


1. Disconnect the power cord and the telephone line cord.
2. Open the front cover ((1)), push the green lever ((2)), then open the back cover (3)).

3. Remove the ink film (4)).

4. Clean the thermal head (5)) with a cloth moistened with isopropyl rubbing alcohol, and let it dry thoroughly.

## Caution:

- To prevent a malfunction due to static electricity, do not use a dry cloth and do not touch the thermal head directly.


5. Re-install the ink film and close the covers (see step 4 to 7 on Installing the Ink Film (P.69)).
6. Install the paper tray, then insert the recording paper gently.
(See Installing the Paper Tray (P.71) and Installing the Recording Paper (P.72))
7. Connect the power cord and the telephone line cord.

## 17 Miscellaneous

### 17.1. Terminal Guide of the ICs, Transistors and Diodes

### 17.1.1. Digital Board

|  | C3ABKC000034 | C0DBFGD00017, C0ABBB000265, C1AB00002556, C0ABBB000184, C0DBFGD00017,C0CBAAD00054, PFWI3G2452CX |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | C0JBAA000393 | C1CB00001921 |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 17.1.2. Analog Board

| C0ABEB000052 |  | UN521, 2SD1819A, PQVTDTC143E, PQVTDTC114TU |  <br> 2SD2137 |  <br> B1AAKL000006 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | B0EDER000009 |  |  |

17.1.3. Operation Board / Microphone Board

|  | B3AAA0000534 |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

### 17.1.4. Power Supply Board

| PFVIFA5518N | TL431CDBVR | TA7804 | D <br> FQPF4N90C | 2SC3928 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PFVD1N4005 PFVDD1NL20U PR1007, HER503 | MA165, HZS6R2NB2 |  |  |  |

17.1.5. Interface Board

| B1HAGFF00015 | B1DHDD000026 |  <br> 2SB1322 | PQVTDTC143E PQVTDTC144TU 2SB1218A |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| B0ECKM000008 | MA4200 |  |  |  |

17.1.6. Handset Board
(

### 17.2. How to Replace the Flat Package IC

Even if you do not have the special tools (for example, a spot heater) to remove the Flat IC, with some solder (large amount), a soldering iron and a cutter knife, you can easily remove the ICs that have more than 100 pins.

### 17.2.1. Preparation

- PbF (: Pb free) Solder
- Soldering Iron

Tip Temperature of $662^{\circ} \mathrm{F} \pm 50^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\left(350^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \pm 10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$
Note: We recommend a 30 to 40 Watt soldering iron. An expert may be able to use a 60 to 80 Watt iron where someone with less experience could overheat and damage the PCB foil.

- Flux

Recommended Flux: Specific Gravity $\rightarrow 0.82$.
Type $\rightarrow$ RMA (lower residue, non-cleaning type)
Note: See About Lead Free Solder (PbF: Pb free) (P.6).

### 17.2.2. Flat Package IC Removal Procedure

1. Put plenty of solder on the IC pins so that the pins can be completely covered.

## Note:

If the IC pins are not soldered enough, you may give pressure to the P.C. board when cutting the pins with a cutter.

2. Make a few cuts into the joint (between the IC and its pins) first and then cut off the pins thoroughly.

3. While the solder melts, remove it together with the IC pins.


When you attach a new IC to the board, remove all solder left on the land with some tools like a soldering wire. If some solder is left at the joint on the board, the new IC will not be attached properly.

### 17.2.3. Flat Package IC Installation Procedure

1. Temporarily fix the FLAT PACKAGE IC, soldering the two marked pins.

*Check the accuracy of the IC setting with the corresponding soldering foil.
2. Apply flux to all pins of the FLAT PACKAGE IC.

3. Solder the pins, sliding the soldering iron in the direction of the arrow.


### 17.2.4. Bridge Modification Procedure

1. Lightly resolder the bridged portion.
2. Remove the remaining solder along the pins using a soldering iron as shown in the figure below.


# THE SLEREXE COMPANY LIMITED 

SAPORS LANE - BOOLE - DORSET - BH 258 ER telephone boole (945 13) 51617-TELEX 123456

Dr. P.N. Cundall,
Mining Surveys Ltd., Holroyd Road,
Reading,
Berks.

Dear Pete,

Permit me to introduce you to the facility of facsimile transmission.

In facsimile a photocell is caused to perform a raster scan over the subject copy. The variations of print density on the document cause the photocell to generate an analogous electrical video signal. This signal is used to modulate a carrier, which is transmitted to a remote destination over a radio or cable communications link.

At the remote terminal, demodulation reconstructs the video signal, which is used to modulate the density of print produced by a printing device. This device is scanning in a raster scan synchronised with that at the transmitting terminal. As a result, a facsimile copy of the subject document is produced.

Probably you have uses for this facility in your organisation.
Yours sincerely,

P.J. CROSS

Group Leader - Facsimile Research

### 17.3.2. ITU-T No. 2 Test Chart


17.3.3. Test Chart


## 18 Schematic Diagram

### 18.1. Digital Board (PCB1)






KX-FG2452CX: Digital Board_Cordless Base

### 18.2. Analog Board (PCB2)




### 18.3. Operation Board (PCB3) / MIC Board (PCB9)



[^3]
### 18.4. Power Supply Board (PCB4)



### 18.5. Interface Board (PCB5)



KX-FG2452CX: Interface Board
18.6. Sensor Board (PCB6)


KX-FG2452CX: Sensor Board

### 18.7. Film End Sensor Board (PCB7)



KX-FG2452CX: Film End Sensor Board

### 18.8. Motor Position Sensor Board (PCB8)



KX-FG2452CX: Motor Position Sensor Board

### 18.9. Handset Board (PCB100)

### 18.9.1. Handset_Main



TEST SIGNAL
FREQUENCY:1KHz


NC: No Components

KX-FG2452CX : Handset Board Main

### 18.9.2. Handset_RF Part


NC: No Components

## 19 Printed Circuit Board

### 19.1. Digital Board (PCB1)

### 19.1.1. Bottom View



KX-FG2452CX: Digital Board (Bottom View)

### 19.1.2. Component View

Refer to "RF Part".


KX-FG2452CX: Digital Board (Component View)
(RF Part)


### 19.2. Analog Board (PCB2)

19.2.1. Bottom View


KX-FG2452CX: Analog Board (Bottom View)

### 19.2.2. Component View



KX-FG2452CX: Analog Board (Component View)
19.3. Operation Board (PCB3) / MIC Board (PCB9)
(Bottom View)


### 19.4. Power Supply Board (PCB4)

(Bottom View)

(Component View)

19.5. Interface Board (PCB5)

19.6. Sensor Board (PCB6)


KX-FG2452CX: Sensor Board


KX-FG2452CX: Interface Board
19.7. Film End Sensor Board (PCB7)


KX-FG2452CX: Film End Sensor Board
19.8. Motor Position Sensor Board (PCB8)


KX-FG2452CX: Motor position Board

### 19.9. Handset Board (PCB100)

19.9.1. Component View

19.9.2. Flow Solder Side View


### 19.9.3. Handset_RF Part



KX-FG2452CX: RF Part in Handset Board (Component View)

## 20 Appendix Information of Schematic Diagram

### 20.1. For Schematic Diagram

Note:

1. DC voltage measurements are taken with an oscilloscope or a tester with a ground
2. The schematic diagrams and circuit board may be modified at any time with the development of new technology.


Important safety notice
Components identified by $\Delta$ mark have special characteristics important for safety. When replacing any of these components, use only the manufacturer's specified parts.

### 20.2. CPU Data

### 20.2.1. IC801 (Digital Board)

| Pin | Description | I/O | High | High_Z | Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | INT0 | D.I | High | - | LOW |
| 2 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 3 | BELL_TX | D.I | High | - | LOW |
| 4 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 5 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 6 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 7 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 8 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 9 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 10 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 11 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 12 | CHARGE_CTL | D.O | Tricle | - | Normal |
| 13 | CHAGE_DET | D.I | Off_charge | - | On_charge |
| 14 | VCC | VCC | VCC | - | - |
| 15 | GND | GND | - | - | GND |
| 16 | EROM_WP | D.O | HIgh | - | LOW |
| 17 | EEPROM_DATA | D.O | Hlgh | - | LOW |
| 18 | EEPROM_CLK | D.O | HIgh | - | LOW |
| 19 | S_ENB | D.I | HIgh | - | LOW |
| 20 | CBUSY2 | D.I | HIgh | - | LOW |
| 21 | CBUSY1 | D.O | Hlgh | - | LOW |
| 22 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 23 | CSI/SDATA | D.O | Hlgh | - | LOW |
| 24 | SLE | D.O | HIgh | - | LOW |
| 25 | CCLK/SCLK | D.O | HIgh | - | LOW |
| 26 | CSO/SDIO | D.I | HIgh | - | LOW |
| 27 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 28 | GND | GND | - | - | GND |
| 29 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 30 | GNDPA | GND | - | - | GND |
| 31 | - | - | - | - | - |
| 32 | VCCPA | VCC | VCC | - | - |
| 33 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 34 | LOUT0 | A.O | - | - | - |
| 35 | DCIN0 | A.I | - | - | - |
| 36 | LIN0 | A.I | - | - | - |
| 37 | VCCA | VCC | VCC | - | - |
| 38 | GNDA | GND | - | - | GND |
| 39 | HSMIP | A.I | - | - | - |
| 40 | HSMIN | A.I | - | - | - |
| 41 | VREF | A.O | - | - | - |
| 42 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 43 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 44 | GNDR | GND | - | - | - |
| 45 | TXMOD | A.O | - | - | - |
| 46 | VREFR | A.O | - | - | - |
| 47 | RSSI | A.I | - | - | - |
| 48 | VCCR | A.I | - | - | - |
| 49 | GNDPLL | GND | - | - | - |
| 50 | VCCPLL | VCC | - | - | - |
| 51 | XOUT | A.O | - | - | - |
| 52 | XIN | A.I | - | - | - |
| 53 | GND | GND | - | - | - |
| 54 | RSIN | D.I | Normal | - | Reset |
| 55 | PDN | D.I | Power ON | - | Power Down |
| 56 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 57 | TXOUT | D.O | High | - | Low |
| 58 | MOD_EN | D.O | High | - | Low |
| 59 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 60 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 61 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 62 | NC | - | - | - | - |


| Pin | Description | 1/0 | High | High_Z | Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 63 | RXEN | D.O | Enable | - | Disable |
| 64 | TXEN | D.O | Enable | - | Disable |
| 65 | RX_GAIN | D.O | High_Gain | - | Low_gain |
| 66 | RXI | D.I | High | - | Low |
| 67 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 68 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 69 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 70 | RF_RESET | D.O | Normal | - | Reset |
| 71 | RADIO_EN | D.O | Enable | - | Disable |
| 72 | GND | GND | - | - | GND |
| 73 | VCC | VCC | VCC | - | - |
| 74 | SHCTRL | D.O | High | - | Low |
| 75 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 76 | TCK | D.O |  |  |  |
| 77 | TMS | D.O |  |  |  |
| 78 | TDI | D.I |  |  |  |
| 79 | TDO | D.O |  |  |  |
| 80 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 81 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 82 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 83 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 84 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 85 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 86 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 87 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 88 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 89 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 90 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 91 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 92 | UART_TX | D.O | - | - | - |
| 93 | UART_RX | D.I | - | - | - |
| 94 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 95 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 96 | GND | GND | - | - | GND |
| 97 | VCC | VCC | VCC | - | - |
| 98 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 99 | NC | - | - | - | - |
| 100 | NC | - | - | - | - |

Note:

- The mark "*" in the I/O column means the port is controlled by the firmware.
- Data in the blank columns are omitted because of the Ana$\log \mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$.


### 20.2.2. IC201 (Handset Board)

| PIN | Description | 1/O | High | High_Z | Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | GNDPA | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 2 | SPOUTP | A.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 3 | BCLK | A.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 4 | RSSI | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 5 | XIN | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 6 | XOUT | A.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 7 | VDD | VDD | -- | -- | -- |
| 8 |  | VCC | VCC | -- | -- |
| 9 | GND | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 10 | GND | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 11 | DCIN0 | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 12 | DCOUT | A.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 13 | RESET | D.I | Normal | -- | Reset |
| 14 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { (FLASH } \\ & -\quad \text { RESET }) \end{aligned}$ | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 15 | (FLASH_SO) | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 16 | (FLASH_SI) | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 17 | (FLASH_CS) | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 18 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 19 | SERIAL DI | D.I | High | -- | Low |
| 20 | TX OUT | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 21 | MOD_EN | D.O | On | -- | Off |
| 22 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 23 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 24 | RF RESET | D.O | Normal | -- | Reset |
| 25 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 26 | SHCTRL | D.O | On | -- | Off |
| 27 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 28 | GND | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 29 | VCC | VCC | VCC | -- | -- |
| 30 | SERIAL_LE | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 31 | SERIAL_CLK | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 32 | SERIAL_DATA | D.I | High | -- | Low |
| 33 | RXEN | D.O | Active | -- | Off |
| 34 | TXEN | D.O | Active | -- | Off |
| 35 | RXGAIN | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 36 | RXI | D.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 37 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 38 | CHARGE_DET | D.I | Off Charge | -- | On Charge |
| 39 | OSC_Buf | D.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 40 | EEPROM_DET | D.O | 64K | -- | 16K |
| 41 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 42 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 43 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 44 | DOT_LCD_D7 | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 45 | DOT_LCD_D6 | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 46 | DOT_LCD_D5 | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 47 | DOT_LCD_D4 | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 48 | GND | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 49 | VCC | VCC | VCC | -- | -- |
| 50 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { DOT_LCD } \\ & \text { _RESET } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | Normal | -- | Reset |
| 51 | (FLASH_SCK) | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 52 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 53 | LED_BL1 | D.O | On | -- | Off |
| 54 | LED_BL2 | D.O | On | -- | Off |
| 55 | LED_BL3 | D.O | On | -- | Off |
| 56 | DOT_LCD_RS | D.O | Data | -- | Instruct |
| 57 | $\begin{gathered} \text { DOT_LCD } \\ \text { _RW_WR } \end{gathered}$ | D.O | Read | -- | Write |
| 58 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { DOT_LCD } \\ & \text { _E_RD } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | Active | -- | Not |
| 59 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { DOT_LCD } \\ & \text { _POWER_SW } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | On | -- | Off |


| PIN | Description | 1/O | High | High_Z | Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 60 | ANT_LED | D.O | On | -- | Off |
| 61 | LIGHTED | D.O | On | -- | Off |
| 62 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 63 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { KEYSTROBE } \\ & \text { E } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | -- | Not | Active |
| 64 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { KEYSTROBE } \\ & \text { D } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | -- | Not | Active |
| 65 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { KEYSTROBE } \\ & \text { C } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | -- | Not | Active |
| 66 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { KEYSTROBE } \\ & \text { B } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | -- | Not | Active |
| 67 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { KEYSTROBE } \\ & \text { A } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | -- | Not | Active |
| 68 | GND | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 69 | VCC | VCC | VCC | -- | -- |
| 70 | TEST_CLK | D.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 71 | TEST_MODE | D.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 72 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TEST_DATA } \\ & \text { IN } \end{aligned}$ | D.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 73 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TEST_DATA } \\ & \text { _OUT } \end{aligned}$ | D.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 74 | KEYIN1 | D.I | Non | -- | Key In |
| 75 | KEYIN2 | D.I | Non | -- | Key In |
| 76 | KEYIN3 | D.I | Non | -- | Key In |
| 77 | KEYIN4 | D.I | Non | -- | Key In |
| 78 | KEYIN5 | D.I | Non | -- | Key In |
| 79 | NC | D.O | -- | -- | Normal |
| 80 | CHARGE_CNT | D.O | Trickle | -- | Normal |
| 81 | EEPROM_CLK | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 82 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { EEPROM } \\ & \text { _DATA } \end{aligned}$ | D.I.O | High | -- | Low |
| 83 | UART_TX | D.O | High | -- | Low |
| 84 | UART_RX | D.I | High | -- | Low |
| 85 | EEPROM_WP | D.O | WP | -- | Write |
| 86 | GND | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 87 | PDN | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 88 | Battlow | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 89 | VREF | A.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 90 | MIP | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 91 | MIN | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 92 | DCIN2 | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 93 | GNDA | GND | -- | -- | GND |
| 94 | VCCA | VCC | VCC | -- | -- |
| 95 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Headset } \\ & \text { MIC_in } \end{aligned}$ | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 96 | HEADSET_DET | A.I | -- | -- | -- |
| 97 | ROUT0 | A.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 98 | HSSPOUT | A.O | -- | -- | -- |
| 99 | VCCPA | VCC | VCC | -- | -- |
| 100 | SPOUTN | A.O | -- | -- | -- |

### 20.3. Explanation of RF unit Terminals (RF Unit)

20.3.1. IC901


| Pin | Description | I/O |
| :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 1 | TX | O \& VCC |
| 2 | GND_ISO1 | GND |
| 3 | GND_ISO2 | GND |
| 4 | RX | I |
| 5 | VCC_RF | VCC |
| 6 | VCC_IF2 | VCC |
| 7 | TESTP | 0 |
| 8 | TESTN | 0 |
| 9 | VCC_IF | VCC |
| 10 | XOUT | XI/XO |
| 11 | XIN | XI/XO |
| 12 | VCC_BIAS | VCC |
| 13 | REXT | 1 |
| 14 | RSSI | 0 |
| 15 | RSTN | 1 |
| 16 | RXDATA | $O$ |
| 17 | TC_CTRL | 1 |


| Pin | Description | I/O |
| :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 18 | VCC_DIG | VCC |
| 19 | VCC_PLL1A | VCC |
| 20 | VCC_PLL1B | VCC |
| 21 | TXEN | 1 |
| 22 | RXEN | 1 |
| 23 | VCC_PLL2B | VCC |
| 24 | VCC_PLL2A | VCC |
| 25 | RXGAIN | 1 |
| 26 | PA_RAMP | 1 |
| 27 | TXMOD | 1 |
| 28 | SYN_CLK | 1 |
| 29 | SYN_EN | 1 |
| 30 | SYN_DATA | 1 |
| 31 | SYN_OUT | $O$ |
| 32 | VCC_PA | VCC |
| PKG | PADDLE_GND | GND |

## 21 Exploded View and Replacement Parts List

### 21.1. Cabinet, Mechanical and Electrical Parts Location

### 21.1.1. General Section



### 21.1.2. Operation Panel Section



### 21.1.3. Upper Cabinet Section






### 21.1.6. Gear Block Section




### 21.1.7. Handset Section



Note:
(*1) Attach the spacer (No. 325) to the exact location described above.
(*2) This cable is fixed by welding. Refer to How to Replace the Handset LCD (P.198).
21.1.8. Screws

|  | Part No. | Figure |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (A) | XTW3+10PFJ7 | (1711111 $\phi 3 \times 10 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| (B) | XSB4+6FJ | T $\phi 4 \times 6 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| (C) | XTW26+14PFJ7 | C आ. <br> $\phi 2.6 \times 14 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| (D) | XTW3+W8PFJ | 据 |
| (E) | XTB26+8GFJ | C) $\phi 2.6 \times 8 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| © | XTB3+10GFJ |  |
| (G) | XTW2+R10PFJ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { C. } \\ & \phi 2 \times 10 \mathrm{~mm} \end{aligned}$ |

### 21.1.9. Accessories and Packing Materials



### 21.2. Replacement Parts List

1. RTL (Retention Time Limited)

Note:
The marking ( RTL ) indicates that the Retention Time is limited for this item.
After the discontinuation of this assembly in production, the item will continue to be available for a specific period of time. The retention period of availability is dependent on the type of assembly, and in accordance with the laws governing parts and product retention.
After the end of this period, the assembly will no longer be available.
2. Important safety notice

Components identified by $\widehat{\Delta}$ mark have special characteristics important for safety. When replacing any of these components, use only manufacture's specified parts.
3. The $S$ mark means the part is one of some identical parts. For that reason, it may be different from the installed part.
4. ISO code (Example: ABS-HB) of the remarks column shows quality of the material and a flame resisting grade about plastics.
5. RESISTORS \& CAPACITORS

Unless otherwise specified;
All resistors are in ohms ( $\Omega$ ) $\mathrm{K}=1000 \Omega, \mathrm{M}=1000 \mathrm{k} \Omega$
All capacitors are in MICRO FARADS $(\mu \mathrm{F}) \mathrm{P}=\mu \mu \mathrm{F}$
*Type \& Wattage of Resistor
Type

| ERC:Solid <br> ERD:Carbon <br> PQRD:Carbon | ERX:Metal Film <br> ERG:Metal Oxide <br> ERO:Metal Film | PQ4R:Carbon <br> ERS:Fusible Resistor <br> ERF:Cement Resistor |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | | Wattage |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $10,16: 1 / 8 \mathrm{~W}$ | $14,25: 1 / 4 \mathrm{~W}$ | $12: 1 / 2 \mathrm{~W}$ | $1: 1 \mathrm{~W}$ | $2: 2 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| $3: 3 \mathrm{~W}$ |  |  |  |  |

*Type \& Voltage of Capacitor
Type
ECFD:Semi-Conductor
ECQS:Styrol
PQCUV:Chip
ECQMS:Mica
ECCD,ECKD,ECBT,PQCBC : Ceramic ECQE,ECQV,ECQG : Polyester ECEA,ECSZ : Electrolytic ECQP : Polypropylene

## Voltage

| ECQ Type | ECQG <br> ECQV Type | ECSZ Type | Others |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $1 \mathrm{H}: 50 \mathrm{~V}$ | $05: 50 \mathrm{~V}$ | $0 \mathrm{~F}: 3.15 \mathrm{~V}$ | 0 J | $: 6.3 \mathrm{~V}$ | 1 V | $: 35 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| $2 \mathrm{~A}: 100 \mathrm{~V}$ | $1: 100 \mathrm{~V}$ | $1 \mathrm{~A}: 10 \mathrm{~V}$ | 1 A | $: 10 \mathrm{~V}$ | $50,1 \mathrm{H}: 50 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |
| $2 \mathrm{E}: 250 \mathrm{~V}$ | $2: 200 \mathrm{~V}$ | $1 \mathrm{~V}: 35 \mathrm{~V}$ | 1 C | $: 16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 1 J | $: 63 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| $2 \mathrm{H}: 500 \mathrm{~V}$ |  | $0 \mathrm{~J}: 6.3 \mathrm{~V}$ | $1 \mathrm{E}, 25: 25 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2 A | $: 100 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |

### 21.2.1. Cabinet and Mechanical Parts

### 21.2.1.1. Operation Panel Section

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | PFGG1296T4 | GRILLE | PS-HB |
| 2 | PFGP1349Z | PANEL, LCD | PC |
| 3 | PFBX1255Y1 | BUTTON, 20 KEY | ABS-HB |
| 4 | PFBX1256Y1 | BUTTON, 4 KEY | ABS-HB |
| 5 | PFBX125771 | BUTTON, 5 KEY | ABS-HB |
| 6 | PFBC1168Z1 | BUTTON | ABS-HB |
| 7 | PFBC1169Z1 | BUTTON | ABS-HB |
| 8 | PFHX1957Z1 | SPACER, SHEET | PC |
| 9 | PFUV1103Z | COVER, OPERATION | PS-HB |
| 10 | PFDG1494Z | GEAR, DOC. EXIT | POM-HB |
| 11 | PFDR1089Y | ROLLER, EXIT |  |
| 12 | PFUS1717Z | SPRING, DOC. EXIT EARTH | SUS |


| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 13 | PFHG1249Z | SPACER, PAD (RUBBER) |  |
| 14 | PFHR1573Z | COVER, SEPARATION HOLDER | ABS-HB |
| 15 | PFUS1712Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 16 | PFHR1575Z | SPACER, DOC. FEED SUPPORT | POM-HB |
| 17 | PFUS1713Z | COIL SPRING, DOC. FEED | SUS |
| 18 | PFJS10M35Z | CONNECTOR, 10 PIN |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.1.2. Upper Cabinet Section

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 40 | L1CC00000063 | PRINTER UNITS, THERMAL HEAD |  |
| 41 | PFHR1569X | GUIDE, HOLDER (LEFT) | POM-HB |
| 42 | PFHR1570Z | GUIDE, HOLDER (RIGHT) | POM-HB |
| 43 | PFHX1350Z | SPACER, SHEET |  |
| 44 | PFJS11M16Z | CONNECTOR, 11 PIN |  |
| 45 | PFUS1710Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 46 | PFQT2701Z | LABEL, INK RIBBON |  |
| 47 | PFQT2708z | LABEL, INK RIBBON SET |  |
| 48 | PFUS1699Z | LEAF SPRING | SUS |
| 49 | PFUS1708Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 50 | PFUS1716Z | SPRING, LOCK EARTH | SUS |
| 51 | N2GZBE000013 | IMAGE SENSOR (CIS) |  |
| 52 | PFJS07M18Z | CONNECTOR, 7 PIN |  |
| 53 | PFUS1494Z | SPRING, CIS | SUS |
| 54 | PFUS1756Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 55 | PFDF1017Z | SHAFT | SUS |
| 56 | PFDR1045Z | ROLLER, DOC. SUB | POM-HB |
| 57 | PFGT3238Z-M | NAME PLATE |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.1.3. Back Cover Section

| $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { Ref. } \\ \text { No. } \end{gathered}$ | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 70 | PFDN1082Z | ROLLER, PLATEN |  |
| 71 | PFHR1572Z | SPACER, HOLDER (RIGHT) | POM-HB |
| 72 | PFHR1571Z | SPACER, HOLDER (LEFT) | POM-HB |
| 73 | PFDG1368Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 74 | PFHR1574Z | LEVER, PAPER TOP | POM-HB |
| 75 | PFUS1743Z | TORSION SPRING | SUS |
| 76 | PFDG1518Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 77 | PFHX1968Z | SPACER, SHEET |  |
| 78 | PFUS1740Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 79 | PFDG1496Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 80 | PFDG1497Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 81 | PFUA1082Y | CHASSIS | PS-HB |
| 82 | PFUS1703y | SPRING, RECORDING PAPER | SUS |
| 83 | PFUS1705Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 84 | PFDG1365Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 85 | PFHX1757Z | COVER, SHEET |  |
| 86 | PFHG1263Z | SPACER, SEPARATION RUBBER |  |
| 87 | PFHR1446Z | COVER, SEPARATION HOLDER | ABS |
| 88 | PFUS1746Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 89 | PFHR1567Z | CASE | PS-HB |
| 90 | PFDR1056Z | ROLLER | POM-HB |
| 91 | PFUS1540Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 92 | PFHR14472 | LEVER | POM-HB |
| 93 | PFUS1539Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 94 | PFDR1088Z | ROLLER, DISCHARGE | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{POM}-\mathrm{HB} / \\ & \mathrm{EPDM} \end{aligned}$ |
| 95 | PFKE1057Y2 | LEVER, LOCK | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ABS+GF2 } \\ & 0-\mathrm{HB} \end{aligned}$ |
| 96 | PFDR10872 | ROLLER, PICKUP | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { POM/ } \\ & \text { EPDM } \end{aligned}$ |
| 97 | PFKV1142Z1 | COVER, ROLLER | PS-HB |
| 98 | PFDR1057Z | ROLLER, SUPPORT | POM |
| 99 | PFUS1706Z | BAR SPRING | SUS |
| 100 | PFUS1750Z | TORSION SPRING | SUS |


| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 101 | PFUS1553Z | LEAF SPRING | PS-HB |
| 102 | PFDG1015X | SPACER | POM-HB |
| 103 | PFKV1143W1 | COVER | PS-HB |
| 104 | PFKR1100Z1 | GUIDE, RIGHT | ABS-HB |
| 105 | PFKR1099Z1 | GUIDE, LEFT | ABS-HB |
| 106 | PFQT2670Z | LABEL, SENDING |  |
| 107 | PFSA1051Z | ANTENNA |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.1.4. Lower Cabinet Section

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 130 | PFMD1104Z | FRAME, BOTTOM | SECC |
| 131 | PFHG1050Z | RUBBER PART, LEG | PORON |
| 132 | PFJS04M36Z | CONNECTOR, 4 PIN |  |
| 133 | PFJA03A016Z | POWER CORD | S |
| 134 | PQLB1E1 | INSULATOR |  |
| 135 | PQHR945Z | BAND |  |
| 136 | XWC4BFJ | WASHER | SUS |
| 137 | PFUS1707Z | TORSION SPRING |  |
| 138 | PFJS02M17Z | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN | S |
| 139 | PFAS50P006Z | SPEAKER | PS-VO |
| 140 | PFKM1204z1 | CABINET BODY | SUS |
| 141 | PFUS1715Z | SPRING, PLATEN EARTH | SUS |
| 142 | PFUS1709Z | SPRING, HEAD EARTH |  |
| 143 | PFJS08M14Z | CONNECTOR, 8 PIN | S |
| 144 | PQLB1E1 | INSULATOR | POM-HB/ |
| 145 | PFDR1086Z | ROLLER, DOC. SEPARATION |  |
| 146 | PFDF1151Z | SHAFT, SEPARATION | POM-HB |
| 147 | PFHR1626Z | CASE/COVER | PS-HB |
| 148 | PQKE10384Z2 | HOLDER | POM-HB |
| 149 | PQJT10218W | TERMINAL-TERMINAL PLATE | SUS |
| 150 | PQJT10219W | TERMINAL-TERMINAL PLATE | SUS |
| 151 | PFJS02M37Z | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  |
| 152 | PQKE10385Z2 | HOLDER, CHARGE TERMINAL | POM-HB |
| 153 | PFKE1072Z1 | CASE, CHARGE | PS-HB |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.1.5. Gear Block Section

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 170 | PFUV1102Z | COVER | POM-HB |
| 171 | PFDG1491Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 172 | PFDG1478Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 173 | PFHR1578Z | ARM | POM-HB |
| 174 | PFUS1545Z | BAR SPRING | SUS |
| 175 | PFDG1485Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 176 | PFHR1579Z | ARM | POM-HB |
| 177 | PFDG1484Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 178 | PFUS1718Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 179 | PFHR1577Z | ARM | POM-HB |
| 180 | PFDG1483Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 181 | PFHR1576Z | ARM | POM-HB |
| 182 | PFHR1580Z | ARM | POM-HB |
| 183 | I6HAYYYK0006 | DC MOTOR |  |
| 184 | PFMH1199Z | FRAME | SECC |
| 185 | PFUS1714Z | COIL SPRING | SUS |
| 186 | PFDG1492Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 187 | PFDE1289Z | SPACER | POM-HB |
| 188 | PFDG1493Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 189 | PFDG1490Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 190 | PFDX1075Z | GEAR | POM+SUS |
| 191 | PFDG1482Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 192 | PFDG1486Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 193 | PFDG1480Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 194 | PFDG1488Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 195 | PFDG1487Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 196 | PFDG1481Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
|  |  |  |  |


| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 197 | PFUA1081Z | CHASSIS | ABS+PBT <br> -v0 |
| 198 | PFDG1489Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
| 199 | PFDG1479Z | GEAR | POM-HB |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.1.6. Handset Section

| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 301 | PQGP10269Z8 | PANEL, LCD | AS-HB |
| 302 | PQHS10691Y | TAPE, DOUBLE SIDED (LCD) |  |
| 303 | PQKM10669S3 | CABINET BODY | ABS-HB |
| 304 | PQGT17947Z | NAME PLATE (made in Malaysia) |  |
|  | PQGT19010Z | NAME PLATE (made in China) |  |
| 305 | PQHS10658Z | SPACER, RECEIVER |  |
| 306 | L0AD02A00023 | RECEIVER |  |
| 307 | PQHR11106Z | GUIDE, RECEIVER | ABS-HB |
| 308 | PQHS10652Z | SPACER, CUSHION LCD |  |
| 309 | PQBC10422z1 | BUTTON , NAVI KEY | ABS-HB |
| 310 | PQSX10280E | KEYBOARD SWITCH |  |
| 311 | PQSA10162Y | ANTENNA |  |
| 312 | PQWE10036Z | BATTERY TERMINAL |  |
| 313 | PQJT10216Y | CHARGE TERMINAL (R) |  |
| 314 | PQJT10217Y | CHARGE TERMINAL (L) |  |
| 315 | PQHR10778Z | GUIDE, SP HOLDER | ABS-HB |
| 316 | PQHG10689Z | SPACER, SPEAKER |  |
| 317 | L0AD02A00026 | SPEAKER |  |
| 318 | PQKE10391Z4 | COVER, EARPHONE CAP |  |
| 319 | PQKF10655Z3 | CABINET COVER | ABS-HB |
| 320 | PQKE10394Z7 | COVER, LED CAP | $\begin{array}{\|l} \hline \text { PC+ABS- } \\ \text { HB } \\ \hline \end{array}$ |
| 321 | PQHR11080Z | OPTIC CONDUCTIVE PARTS, LED LENS | PMMA - HB |
| 322 | PQHR11081X | SPACER, LED CAP | ABS-HB |
| 323 | PQHX11294U | PLASTIC PARTS, BATTERY COVER SHEET |  |
| 324 | HHR-P105A | BATTERY |  |
| 325 | PQHS10681Y | SPACER, BATTERY |  |
| 326 | PQKK10586Z6 | LID, BATTERY COVER | ABS-HB |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.1.7. Accessories and Packing Materials

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| A1 | PFJA02B002Y | CORD, TELEPHONE |  |
| A2 | PFKS1145Z1 | TRAY | ABS-HB |
| A3 | PFQT2825Z | LABEL, PAPER SET |  |
| A4 | PFUS1704Z | SPRING, TRAY | SUS |
| A5 | PFQX2582Z | INSTRUCTION BOOK |  |
| A6 | PFQW2495Z | QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE (for <br> Arabic) |  |
| A7 | Not Used |  | PET |
| A8 | PFPE1490Z | INK RIBBON (10M) |  |
| A9 | PFQW2496Z | QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE (for <br> Farsi) |  |
| A10 | PFQW2497Z | QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE (for <br> Thai) |  |
| P1 | PQKE10393Z6 | BELT CLIP (Option) | S |
| P2 | PFPN1437Z | CUSHION, LEFT | EPS |
| P3 | PFPN1438Z | CUSHION, RIGHT |  |
| P4 | PFPD1293Z | ACCESSORY BOX |  |
| P5 | XZB20X35A04 | PROTECTION COVER |  |
| P6 | XZB20X35A04 | PROTECTION COVER (for TRAY) |  |
| P7 | PQPP10005Z | PROTECTION COVER, (for <br> PRINTED MATTER) |  |
| P8 | PFPH1085Z | PACKING SHEET |  |
| P9 | XZB10X35A02 | PROTECTION COVER (for H/S) |  |
|  |  | GIFT BOX |  |

### 21.2.2. Digital Board Parts

Note:
(1*) When you have replaced IC502 or IC805, adjust X801 Refer to Check and Adjust X801 (Base RF) Frequency (P.199).

| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PCB1 | PFWP1G2452CX | DIGITAL BOARD ASS'Y (RTL) |  |
|  |  | (ICs) |  |
| IC501 | C1ZBZ0003300 | IC |  |
| IC502 | PFWI1G2452CX | IC (1*) |  |
| IC503 | C3ABKC000034 | IC |  |
| IC504 | C3FBKC000135 | IC |  |
| IC505 | CODBFGD00017 | IC |  |
| IC506 | COJBAA000393 | IC |  |
| IC701 | C1CB00001921 | IC |  |
| IC702 | C0JBASO00128 | IC |  |
| IC703 | C0JBAS000128 | IC |  |
| IC704 | C0ABBB000265 | IC |  |
| IC705 | C1AB00002556 | IC |  |
| IC706 | C0ABBB000184 | IC |  |
| IC801 | C2HBBY000036 | IC |  |
| IC802 | CODBFGD00017 | IC |  |
| IC804 | C0CBAAD00054 | IC |  |
| IC805 | PFWI3G2452CX | IC (1*) |  |
| IC806 | PQVISN7AH157 | IC | S |
| IC901 | C1CB00001657 | IC |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (TRANSISTORS) |  |
| Q501 | B1ABDF000025 | TRANSISTOR (SI) |  |
| Q502 | B1ABDF000025 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  |
| Q601 | 2SB1218ARL | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  |
| 2602 | B1ABDF000026 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  |
| Q603 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S |
| Q604 | B1ABDF000025 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  |
| Q605 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S |
| Q701 | B1ABDF000025 | TRANSISTOR (SI) |  |
| Q702 | B1ABDF000025 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  |
| Q703 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR (SI) | S |
| Q704 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR (SI) | S |
| Q801 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S |
| Q802 | 2SC39300CL | TRANSISTOR (SI) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (DIODES) |  |
| D903 | B0DCCD000011 | DIODE (SI) |  |
| D904 | B0DCCD000011 | DIODE (SI) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (CONNECTORS) |  |
| CN501 | K1KA11A00170 | CONNECTOR, 11 PIN |  |
| CN502 | K1KA11A00170 | CONNECTOR, 11 PIN |  |
| CN503 | K1KA08A00440 | CONNECTOR, 8 PIN |  |
| CN504 | K1KA07A00257 | CONNECTOR, 7 PIN |  |
| CN505 | K1KA02A00587 | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  |
| CN506 | K1KA04A00527 | CONNECTOR, 4 PIN |  |
| CN507 | K1KA18A00101 | CONNECTOR, 18 PIN |  |
| CN508 | K1MN08A00017 | CONNECTOR, 8 PIN |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (COILS) |  |
| L602 | PQLQR2KA20T | COIL | S |
| L704 | PQLQR2KA20T | COIL | S |
| L716 | PQLQR2KA113 | COIL | S |
| L717 | PQLQR2KA113 | COIL | S |
| L801 | PQLQR2KA213 | COIL | S |
| L901 | MQLPF18NJFB | COIL |  |
| L902 | MQLPF10NJFB | COIL |  |
| L903 | MQLRF3N3DFB | COIL |  |
| L904 | MQLRF22NJFB | COIL |  |
| L905 | MQLRF10NJFB | COIL |  |
| L909 | MQLRF3N9DFB | COIL |  |
| L911 | MQLRF2N7DFB | COIL |  |
| L913 | MQLRF18NJFB | COIL |  |


| $\begin{gathered} \text { Ref. } \\ \text { No. } \end{gathered}$ | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| L990 | G1C1R0KA0096 | COIL |  |
|  |  | (COMPONENTS PARTS) |  |
| RA601 | EXB28V101JX | RESISTOR ARRAY |  |
| RA801 | D1H84724A013 | RESISTOR ARRAY | S |
| RA901 | D1H810240004 | RESISTOR ARRAY | S |
|  |  | (CRYSTAL OSCILLATORS) |  |
| X501 | H0A327200147 | CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR |  |
| $\times 502$ | H2C240500006 | CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR |  |
| $\times 701$ | H0J322500006 | CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR |  |
| $\times 801$ | H0J138500003 | CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR (1*) |  |
|  |  | (IC FILTER) |  |
| FL901 | J0E2457B0008 | IC FILTER |  |
|  |  | (ELECTRICAL PARTS) |  |
| E1 | PQMC10493Z | MAGNETIC SHIELD |  |
| E2 | PQMC10494Z | MAGNETIC SHIELD |  |
|  |  | (RESISTORS) |  |
| R501 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| R512 | ERJ2GEJ223 | 22k |  |
| R513 | ERJ2GEJ433 | 43k |  |
| R514 | ERJ3GEYJ4R7 | 4.7 |  |
| R515 | ERJ3EKF1101 | 1.1 k |  |
| R516 | ERJ3EKF3602 | 36k |  |
| R517 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| R518 | ERJ2GEJ203 | 20k |  |
| R519 | ERJ2GEJ182 | 1.8k |  |
| R520 | ERJ2GEJ334 | 330k |  |
| R521 | ERJ2GEJ475 | 4.7M |  |
| R525 | ERJ2GEJ471 | 470 |  |
| R528 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R529 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R530 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  |
| R531 | ERJ2GEJ105X | 1M |  |
| R551 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| R553 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| R601 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R603 | ERJ2GEJ223 | 22k |  |
| R605 | ERJ2GEJ221 | 220 |  |
| R606 | ERJ2GEJ221 | 220 |  |
| R607 | PQ4R10xJ100 | 10 | S |
| R608 | ERJ2GEJ332 | 3.3k |  |
| R617 | ERJ2GEJ223 | 22k |  |
| R618 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R619 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R626 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R627 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R628 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R629 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R630 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R631 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R632 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R633 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R636 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R637 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  |
| R638 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R639 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R640 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  |
| R641 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R642 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| R643 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| R701 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| R702 | ERJ2GEJ471 | 470 |  |
| R704 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| R705 | ERJ2GEJ122 | 1.2k |  |
| R707 | ERJ2GEYJ474 | 470k | S |
| R708 | ERJ2GEJ683 | 68k |  |
| R709 | ERJ2GEJ684 | 680k |  |
| R711 | ERJ2GEJ683 | 68k |  |
| R712 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |

KX-FG2452CX

| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Ref. } \\ & \text { No. } \end{aligned}$ | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| R714 | ERJ2GEJ471 | 470 |  | R852 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  |
| R715 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  | R853 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  |
| R716 | ERJ2GEJ272 | 2.7k |  | R854 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| R717 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  | R861 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  |
| R718 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  | R862 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| R720 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | R864 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R723 | ERJ2GEJ224 | 220k |  | R865 | ERJ2GEJ562X | 5.6k |  |
| R724 | ERJ2GEJ224 | 220k |  | R906 | ERJ2RKF103X | 10k |  |
| R725 | ERJ2GEJ363 | 36k |  | R909 | ERJ2GEJ331 | 330 |  |
| R726 | ERJ2GEJ392 | 3.9k |  | R919 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R727 | ERJ2GEJ334 | 330k |  | R930 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R728 | ERJ2GEJ822 | 8.2k |  | R931 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R729 | ERJ2GEJ153 | 15k |  | R932 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R731 | ERJ2GEJ184 | 180k |  | R933 | ERJ2GEJ331 | 330 |  |
| R732 | ERJ2GEJ273x | 27k |  | R940 | ERJ2GEJ4R7 | 4.7 |  |
| R734 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | R941 | ERJ2GEJ100 | 10 |  |
| R735 | ERJ2GEJ473 | 47k |  | R942 | ERJ2GEJ100 | 10 |  |
| R737 | ERJ3GEYJ563 | 56k |  | R943 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  |
| R738 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | R991 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| R740 | ERJ3GEYJ334 | 330k |  |  |  |  |  |
| R744 | ERJ3GEYJ183 | 18k |  |  |  | (CAPACITORS) |  |
| R745 | ERJ2GEJ124 | 120k |  | C502 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| R746 | ERJ2GEJ124 | 120k |  | C505 | ECJ1VF1H104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R748 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  | C506 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| R751 | ERJ2GEJ153 | 15k |  | C507 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| R753 | ERJ2GEJ682 | 6.8k |  | C508 | ECJOEB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| R754 | ERJ2GEJ473 | 47k |  | C509 | F2G0J1010042 | 100 |  |
| R756 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  | C511 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R757 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  | C512 | ECJOEB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| R758 | ERJ2GEJ273x | 27k |  | C513 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R759 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  | C514 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R760 | ERJ2GEJ153 | 15k |  | C515 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| R761 | ERJ2GEJ224 | 220k |  | C516 | ECJOEB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| R763 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C517 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R766 | ERJ2GEJ224 | 220k |  | C518 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R769 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  | C520 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R771 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C521 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R772 | ERJ2GEJ272 | 2.7k |  | C522 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R773 | PQ4R18xJ220 | 22 | S | C523 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R783 | ERJ3GEYJ272 | 2.7k |  | C524 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R784 | ERJ3GEYJ272 | 2.7k |  | C525 | ECJOEB1H222K | 0.0022 |  |
| R785 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C526 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| R786 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C527 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| R788 | ERJ2GEJ273X | 27k |  | C528 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| R789 | ERJ2GEJ273x | 27k |  | C529 | ECJ0EC1H180J | 18P |  |
| R790 | ERJ2GEJ563 | 56k |  | C530 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R791 | ERJ2GEJ473 | 47k |  | C532 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| R803 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C533 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| R804 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  | C538 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R805 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C539 | ECJOEF1C104z | 0.1 |  |
| R816 | ERJ2GEJ681 | 680 |  | C540 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| R817 | ERJ2GEJ151 | 150 |  | C541 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| R818 | ERJ2GEJ561 | 560 |  | C542 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R819 | ERJ2GEJ393X | 39k |  | C543 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R820 | ERJ2GEJ182 | 1.8k |  | C544 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R823 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C551 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R825 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C554 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R826 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  | C555 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R830 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  | C557 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R833 | ERJ2GEJ181 | 180 |  | C559 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R834 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  | C603 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R836 | ERJ2GEJ181 | 180 |  | C604 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| R839 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  | C606 | ECUV1H103KBV | 0.01 |  |
| R840 | ERJ2GEJ181 | 180 |  | C607 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R842 | ERJ2GEJ470 | 47 |  | C626 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| R843 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  | C627 | ECJOEB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| R845 | ERJ2GEJ470 | 47 |  | C628 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| R846 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  | C636 | ECJ0EF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R847 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  | C637 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| R848 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  | C638 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| R849 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  | C639 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| R850 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  | C701 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| R851 | ERJ2GEJ472X | 4.7k |  | C702 | ECJ0EC1H560J | 56P |  |


| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| C703 | F1G1E562A086 | 0.0056 |  |
| C704 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C706 | ECJOEC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C707 | F2G0J1010042 | 100 |  |
| C708 | ECJOEB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C709 | ECJOEB1C103K | 0.01 |  |
| C711 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| C712 | ECJOEB1H222K | 0.0022 |  |
| C714 | F1G1H9R0A420 | 9P |  |
| C715 | ECJOEB1A563K | 0.056 |  |
| C716 | ECJ0EC1H330J | 33P |  |
| C718 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C720 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C721 | ECJ1VF1H104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C723 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C724 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C726 | ECUV1C104KBV | 0.1 |  |
| C727 | ECJ1VF1H104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C728 | ECJ0EC1H470J | 47P |  |
| C729 | ECUV1C104KBV | 0.1 |  |
| C730 | ECUV1C563KBV | 0.056 |  |
| C731 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C732 | F2G1V1000007 | 10 |  |
| C733 | F2G1V1000007 | 10 |  |
| C734 | ECUV1C273KBV | 0.027 |  |
| C735 | ECJ1VF1H104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C738 | ECJ1VB0J475K | 4.7 |  |
| C739 | ECJOEB1H222K | 0.0022 |  |
| C740 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C741 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C743 | ECUV1C104KBV | 0.1 |  |
| C744 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C745 | ECUV1H560JCV | 56P |  |
| C746 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| C747 | F1G0J1050003 | 1 |  |
| C748 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| C751 | ECUV1C104KBV | 0.1 |  |
| C753 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C754 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C755 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C756 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C757 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| C758 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C759 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C760 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C763 | ECJ1VB0J475K | 4.7 |  |
| C764 | ECJ1VB0J475K | 4.7 |  |
| C765 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C767 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C769 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C770 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| C773 | ECJOEF1C104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C774 | ECJ1VB0J475K | 4.7 |  |
| C775 | ECJ1VB0J475K | 4.7 |  |
| C777 | ECJOEB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C778 | F2G0J1010042 | 100 |  |
| C783 | ECJ0EB1C103K | 0.01 |  |
| C784 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C785 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C786 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C787 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C788 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C790 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C791 | ECJ0EF1C104z | 0.1 |  |
| C796 | ECJ0EF1C104z | 0.1 |  |
| C801 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C802 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| C803 | ECJ0EB1H471K | 470P |  |
| C804 | F2G0J1010042 | 100 |  |
| C805 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| C807 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| C808 | EEE0GA331WP | 330 |  |
| C809 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |


| $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { Ref. } \\ \text { No. } \end{gathered}$ | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| C810 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C811 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C812 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C813 | ECJ0EC1H020C | 2P |  |
| C814 | ECJ0EC1H020C | 2P |  |
| C817 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C818 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C819 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C820 | ECJ0EC1H030C | 3P |  |
| C822 | ECJOEB1C103K | 0.01 |  |
| C824 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| C825 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C826 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C828 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C829 | ECJ0EB1C103K | 0.01 |  |
| C833 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C861 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C862 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C864 | ECST0JY106 | 10 | S |
| C865 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C866 | F1J0J1060006 | 10 | S |
| C868 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C869 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C873 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C874 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C875 | ECJOEB1C223K | 0.022 |  |
| C876 | ECJ0EB1A473K | 0.047 |  |
| C877 | ERJ2GE0R00 | 0 |  |
| C904 | F1G1H1R8A561 | 1.8P |  |
| C910 | ECJ0EC1H1R5C | 1.5 |  |
| C911 | ECJ0EC1H470J | 47P |  |
| C917 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C918 | ECJ0EC1H050C | 5P |  |
| C922 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C937 | ECJ0EB1H471K | 470P |  |
| C938 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C939 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C940 | ECJ0EB1C103K | 0.01 |  |
| C941 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C942 | PQCUV0J475MB | 4.7 | S |
| C944 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C946 | ECJ0EB1H222K | 0.0022 |  |
| C952 | ECJ0EC1H020C | 2P |  |
| C956 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C960 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C962 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C963 | ECJ0EC1H100D | 10P |  |
| C964 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C965 | ECJ0EC1H221J | 220P |  |
| C976 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C977 | ECJOEB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C979 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C980 | ECJ0EB1C103K | 0.01 |  |
| C983 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C984 | ECJ0EC1H101J | 100P |  |
| C990 | ECJ0EB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
| C991 | ECJ0EC1H050C | 5P |  |
| C992 | ECJ0EC1H121J | 120P |  |
| C993 | ECJOEB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C996 | ECJ0EB1A104K | 0.1 |  |
| C997 | ECJ0EC1H0R5C | 0.5 |  |
| C998 | F1G1HR75A561 | 0.75 |  |
|  |  |  |  |

21.2.3. Analog Board Parts

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB2 | PFLP1796CX-A | ANALOG BOARD ASS'Y (RTL) | ^ |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (ICs) |  |
| IC101 | C0ABEB000052 | IC |  |
| IC103 | CODAZYY00010 | IC |  |

## KX-FG2452CX

| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks | Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | R134 | ERJ3GEY0R00 | 0 |  |
|  |  | (TRANSISTORS) |  | R151 | ERJ3GEYJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| Q103 | UN521 | TRANSISTOR (SI) | S | R163 | ERJ3GEYJ473 | 47k |  |
| Q106 | B1AAKL000006 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  | R167 | ERJ3GEYJ822 | 8.2k |  |
| Q107 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R168 | ERJ3GEYJ682 | 6.8k |  |
| Q110 | 2SD2137 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  | R169 | ERJ3GEYJ272 | 2.7k |  |
| Q111 | PQVTDTC114TU | TRANSISTOR (SI) | S | R181 | ERJ3GEYJ752 | 7.5k |  |
| Q112 | 2SD1819A | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  | R182 | ERJ3GEYJ622 | 6.2k |  |
|  |  |  |  | R191 | ERJ3GEY0R00 | 0 |  |
|  |  | (DIODES) |  | R192 | ERJ3GEYJ101 | 100 |  |
| D102 | MA4056 | DIODE (SI) | S | R193 | ERJ6GEYJ8R2 | 8.2 | S |
| D103 | MA4056 | DIODE (SI) | S | R194 | PQ4R10XJ120 | 12 |  |
| D106 | 1SS133 | DIODE (SI) | S | R195 | PQ4R10XJ150 | 15 | S |
| D107 | B0EDER000009 | DIODE (SI) |  | R196 | ERJ3GEYJ102 | 1k |  |
| D109 | MA4030 | DIODE (SI) | S | R197 | ERJ6GEY0R00 | 0 | S |
| D110 | MA4030 | DIODE (SI) | S |  |  |  |  |
| D111 | 1SS133 | DIODE (SI) | S |  |  | (CAPACITORS) |  |
| D112 | B0BA2R000018 | DIODE (SI) |  | C101 | F0C2E1050005 | 1 |  |
| D151 | 1SS133 | DIODE (SI) | S | C103 | ECUV1H010CCV | 1P |  |
|  |  |  |  | C109 | ECEA1HN4R7S | 4.7 | S |
|  |  | (BATTERY) |  | C110 | ECUV1H103KBV | 0.01 |  |
| BAT151 | PQPCR2032H09 | LITHIUM BATTERY | S | C112 | ECUV1C104KBV | 0.1 |  |
|  |  |  |  | C114 | ECUV1H123KBV | 0.012 |  |
|  |  | (JACK AND CONNECTORS) |  | C115 | ECUV1H391JCV | 390P | S |
| CN102 | PFJJ1T01Z | JACK | S | C116 | ECUV1H391JCV | 390P | S |
| CN103 | PQJS18A10Z | CONNECTOR, 18 PIN | S | C117 | ECEA1HKA4R7 | 4.7 |  |
| CN104 | K1KA02A00587 | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  | C118 | ECUV1C104KBV | 0.1 |  |
|  |  |  |  | C120 | ECUV1C563KBV | 0.056 |  |
|  |  | (COILS) |  | C121 | ECUV1H151JCV | 150P |  |
| L101 | PFVF2B182SDT | COIL | S | C123 | ECEA1CKA100 | 10 |  |
| L102 | PFVF2B182SDT | COIL | S | C135 | ECUV1E104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| LF101 | PFLE003 | COIL | S | C156 | ECKD2H681KB | 680P | S |
|  |  |  |  | C157 | ECKD2H681KB | 680P | S |
|  |  | (PHOTO ELECTRIC TRANSDUCERS) |  | C166 | ECEA0JKA470 | 47 |  |
| PC102 | ON3181 | PHOTO COUPLER | S 4 | C168 | ECUV1E104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| PC105 | B3PAB0000058 | PHOTO COUPLER | A | C185 | ECUV1H104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
|  |  |  |  | C186 | ECEA1CKA221 | 220 | S |
|  |  | (RELAY) |  | C187 | ECUV1C104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| RL101 | K6B1CYY00005 | RELAY | ^ | C188 | ECUV1C104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
|  |  |  |  | C189 | ECEA1CK101 | 100 | S |
|  |  | (THERMISTOR) |  | C190 | ECUV1H030CCV | 3P |  |

### 21.2.4. Operation Board Parts

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB3 | PFWP2FG2451M | OPERATION BOARD ASS'Y (RTL) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (IC) |  |
| IC301 | C1ZBZ0002089 | IC |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (DIODES) |  |
| LED301 | B3AAA0000534 | LED |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY) |  |
| CN302 | L5DAAFB00001 | LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY | S |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (CONNECTOR) |  |
| CN301 | K1KA08B00243 | CONNECTOR, 8 PIN |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (SWITCHES) |  |
| SW301 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW302 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW303 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW304 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW305 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW306 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW307 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW308 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW309 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW310 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW311 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW312 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
|  |  |  |  |


| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SW313 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW314 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW315 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW316 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW317 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW318 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW319 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW320 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW321 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW322 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW323 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW324 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW325 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW326 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW327 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW328 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW329 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW330 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW331 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW332 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW333 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
| SW334 | K0H1BA000259 | SPECIAL SWITCH |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (RESISTORS) |  |
| R300 | ERJ3GEYJ680 | 68 |  |
| R301 | ERJ3GEYJ181 | 180 |  |
| R302 | ERJ3GEYJ271 | 270 |  |
| R303 | ERJ3GEYJ181 | 180 |  |
| R310 | ERJ3GEYJ183 | 18k |  |
| R311 | ERJ3GEYJ122 | 1.2k |  |
| R312 | ERJ3GEYJ821 | 820 |  |
| R314 | ERJ3GEYJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| R315 | ERJ3GEYJ4R7 | 4.7 |  |
| R316 | ERJ3GEYJ181 | 180 |  |
| R320 | ERJ3GEYJ331 | 330 |  |
| R321 | ERJ3GEYJ331 | 330 |  |
| R330 | ERJ3GEYJ472 | 4.7k |  |
| R331 | ERJ3GEYJ101 | 100 |  |
| R332 | ERJ3GEYJ472 | 4.7k |  |
| R333 | ERJ3GEYJ101 | 100 |  |
| R341 | ERJ3GEYJ332 | 3.3k |  |
| R342 | ERJ3GEYJ181 | 180 |  |
| R343 | ERJ3GEYJ102 | 1k |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (CAPACITORS) |  |
| C300 | ECUV1C104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| C302 | ECEA0JKS101 | 100 | S |
| C303 | ECUV1H102KBV | 0.001 |  |
| C304 | ECUV1H101JCV | 100P |  |
| C305 | ECUV1H331JCV | 330P |  |
| C306 | ECUV1H331JCV | 330 P |  |
| C307 | ECUV1C104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| C308 | ECUV1C104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| C310 | ECUV1C104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| C311 | ECUV1C104ZFV | 0.1 |  |
| C330 | ECUV1H103KBV | 0.01 |  |
| C331 | ECUV1H103KBV | 0.01 |  |
| C341 | ECUV1H101JCV | 100P |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (OTHERS) |  |
| E30 | K0L1BA000126 | SWITCH, SENSOR LEVER |  |
| E31 | K0L1BA000127 | SWITCH, SENSOR LEVER |  |
| E32 | WLK2 6YR05AA | LEAD WIRE (Red) |  |
| E33 | WLK26YW05AA | LEAD WIRE (White) |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.5. Power Supply Board Parts

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB4 | N0AC3GJ00012 | POWER SUPPLY BOARD ASS'Y <br> (RTL) | ^ |
|  |  |  |  |


| $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { Ref. } \\ \text { No. } \end{gathered}$ | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | (ICs) |  |
| IC101 | PFVIFA5518N | IC | S |
| IC201 | TL431CDBVR | IC |  |
| IC202 | TA7804 | IC |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (TRANSISTORS) |  |
| Q101 | FQPF4N90C | TRANSISTOR (SI) | A |
| Q203 | $2 \mathrm{SC3928}$ | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (DIODES) |  |
| D101 | PFVD1N4005 | DIODE (SI) | S 1 |
| D102 | PFVD1N4005 | DIODE (SI) | S 1 |
| D103 | PFVD1N4005 | DIODE (SI) | S A |
| D104 | PFVD1N4005 | DIODE (SI) | S 1 |
| D105 | PQVDPR1007 | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D106 | PFVDD1NL20U | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D107 | MA165 | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D110 | PFVD1N4005 | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D201 | SF50DG | DIODE (SI) |  |
| D202 | PFVDD1NL20U | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D205 | MTZJ6R2B | DIODE (SI) | S |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (CONNECTOR) |  |
| CN202 | 2921618 | CONNECTOR, 8 PIN | S 1 |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (COIL) |  |
| L101 | ELF15N004A | COIL | A |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (COMPONENTS PARTS) |  |
| L102 | EXCELDR35 | COMPONENTS PARTS |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (FUSE) |  |
| F101 | PFBAST250315 | FUSE | S 1 |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (PHOTO ELECTRIC TRANSDUCER) |  |
| PC101 | PFVIPC123 | PHOTO COUPLER | S 1 |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (TRANSFORMER) |  |
| T101 | A044A2801 | TRANSFORMER | S A |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (VARIABLE RESISTOR) |  |
| VR201 | EVNCYAA03B53 | VARIABLE RESISTOR | S |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (VARISTOR) |  |
| ZNR101 | ERZV10D751 | VARISTOR | ¢ |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (RESISTORS) |  |
| JP201 | ERJ3GEY0R00 | 0 |  |
| R101 | ERJ8GEYJ105 | 1M |  |
| R102 | ERJ8GEYJ105 | 1M |  |
| R103 | ERJ8GEYJ105 | 1M |  |
| R104 | ERJ3GEYJ473 | 47k |  |
| R105 | ERX2SJR22E | 0.22 |  |
| R106 | ERG2SJ104 | 100k |  |
| R107 | ERG2SJ470 | 47 |  |
| R110 | ERDS2TJ470 | 47 |  |
| R111 | ERDS2TJ150 | 15 |  |
| R112 | ERJ3GEYJ101 | 100 |  |
| R113 | ERJ3GEYJ103 | 10k |  |
| R122 | ERJ3GEYJ391 | 390 |  |
| R123 | ERJ3GEYJ182 | 1.8k |  |
| R201 | ERDS2TJ470 | 47 |  |
| R221 | ERJ3GEYJ102 | 1k |  |
| R222 | ERJ3GEYJ102 | 1k |  |
| R223 | ERJ3GEYJ102 | 1k |  |
| R224 | ERJ3GEYJ562 | 5.6k |  |
| R225 | ERJ3GEYJ332 | 3.3k |  |
| R229 | ERJ3GEYJ183 | 18k |  |
| R230 | ERG2SJ151 | 150 |  |
| R231 | ERG2SJ151 | 150 |  |
| R232 | ERJ3GENF153 | 15k |  |
| R233 | ERJ3GENF473 | 47k |  |


| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| R234 | ERJ3GENF473 | 47 k |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (CAPACITORS) |  |
| C101 | ECQU2A104MLA | 0.1 | A |
| C102 | ECQU2A104MLA | 0.1 | S . |
| C103 | DE1E102MN4AL | 0.001 | S |
| C105 | DE1E102MN4AL | 0.001 |  |
| C106 | 400SXW47MM71 | 47 | S |
| C108 | PFCEA33102N2 | 0.001 | S |
| C109 | PFKDD3DD470J | 47 P | S |
| C110 | DE1E102MM4AL | 0.001 | S |
| C111 | 35YXA47M71TA | 47 |  |
| C121 | ECJ1VB1H472K | 0.0047 |  |
| C122 | ECJ1VB1A224K | 0.22 |  |
| C123 | ECJ1VB1H104K | 0.1 |  |
| C124 | ECJ1VB1H103K | 0.01 |  |
| C201 | KY35VB470M | 470 | S |
| C205 | ECJ1VB1E104K | 0.1 |  |
| C211 | KY10VB470M | 470 | S |
| C212 | PFCEA33102N2 | 0.001 |  |
| C213 | ECJ1VB1E104K | 0.1 |  |
| C214 | ECJ1VB1E104K | 0.1 |  |
| C215 | PFCEA33102N2 | 0.001 |  |
| C217 | KY25VB100M | 100 |  |
| C218 | ECJ1VB1H104K | 0.1 |  |

### 21.2.6. Interface Board Parts

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Ref. } \\ & \text { No. } \end{aligned}$ | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PCB5 | PFLP1796MZ-B | INTERFACE BOARD ASS'Y (RTL) |  |
|  |  | (TRANSISTORS) |  |
| Q401 | B1DHDD000026 | TRANSISTOR (SI) |  |
| Q402 | 2SB1322 | TRANSISTOR (SI) | S |
| Q403 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S |
| Q404 | PQVTDTC144TU | TRANSISTOR (SI) | S |
| Q405 | 2SB1218A | TRANSISTOR (SI) |  |
| IC401 | B1HAGFF00015 | TRANSISTOR (SI) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (DIODES) |  |
| D401 | 1SS133 | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D404 | MA4200 | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D405 | MA4200 | DIODE (SI) | S |
| D406 | B0ECKM000008 | DIODE (SI) |  |
| D407 | B0BA7R900004 | DIODE (SI) |  |
| D408 | B0BA7R900004 | DIODE (SI) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (CONNECTORS) |  |
| CN401 | K1KA08A00440 | CONNECTOR, 8 PIN |  |
| CN402 | PQJS11A10Z | CONNECTOR, 11 PIN | S |
| CN403 | PQJS11A10Z | CONNECTOR, 11 PIN | S |
| CN404 | K1KA11A00158 | CONNECTOR, 11 PIN |  |
| CN405 | K1KA05AA0193 | CONNECTOR, 5 PIN |  |
| CN407 | K1KA02A00587 | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  |
| CN408 | K1KA02AA0193 | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  |
| CN409 | K1KA02A00587 | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (COILS) |  |
| L407 | JOJCC0000288 | COIL |  |
| L408 | J0JCC0000288 | COIL |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (FUSES) |  |
| F401 | K5H122200005 | FUSE |  |
| F402 | K5H251200003 | FUSE |  |
| F403 | K5H801200001 | FUSE |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (RESISTORS) |  |
| R401 | ERJ3GEYJ562 | 5.6k |  |
| R402 | ERDS1TJ152 | 1.5k |  |
| R403 | ERJ3GEYJ821 | 820 |  |
| R404 | PQ4R10xJ221 | 220 | S |
| R405 | ERJ3GEYJ332 | 3.3k |  |


| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (CAPACITORS) |  |
| C402 | ECJ1VF1H104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C403 | ECJ1VF1H104Z | 0.1 |  |
| C404 | ECJ1VC1H101J | 100 P |  |
| C405 | ECJ1VC1H101J | 100 P |  |
| C406 | ECJ1VB1H102K | 0.001 |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.7. Sensor Board Parts

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB6 | PFWP4FG2451M | SENSOR BOARD ASS'Y (RTL) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| CN1001 | K1KA04B00225 | CONNECTOR, 4 PIN |  |
| SW1001 | KOL2BA000001 | SWITCH, SENSOR LEVER |  |
| SW1002 | K0MA11000041 | REED SWITCH |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.8. Film End Sensor Board Parts

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB7 | PFWP5FG2451M | FILM END SENSOR BOARD ASS'Y <br> (RTL) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| E70 | PFJS02M17Z | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  |
| SW1003 | K0L1BA000111 | SWITCH, SENSOR LEVER |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.9. Motor Position Sensor Board Parts

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB8 | PFWP6FG2451M | MOTOR POSITION SENSOR BOARD <br> ASS'Y (RTL) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| E80 | K0L1BA000128 | SWITCH, SENSOR LEVER |  |
| E81 | PFJS02M15Z | CONNECTOR, 2 PIN |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.10. Microphone Board Parts

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB9 | PFWP3FG2451M | MICROPHONE BOARD ASS'Y (RTL) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| LED302 | B3AAA0000534 | LED |  |
|  |  |  |  |
| E90 | L0CBAB000052 | MICROPHONE |  |
|  |  |  |  |

### 21.2.11. Handset Board Parts

## Note:

(2*) When you have replaced IC201 or IC241, adjust X201.
Refer to Check and Adjust X201 (Handset RF) Frequency (P.199) and Adjust Battery Low Detector Voltage (Handset) (P.200).
( $3^{*}$ ) When replacing the Handset LCD, see How to Replace the Handset LCD (P.198).

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PCB100 | PQWPG2423BXR | HANDSET BOARD ASS'Y (RTL) |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (ICs) |  |
| IC201 | C2HBBY000030 | IC (*2) |  |
| IC221 | PQVIC61CC22N | IC | S |


| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Ref. } \\ & \text { No. } \end{aligned}$ | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| IC241 | PQWIG2420BXR | IC (*2) |  | R222 | ERJ2GEJ223 | 22k |  |
| IC371 | C0CBCAD00071 | IC |  | R223 | ERJ2GEJ224 | 220k |  |
| IC373 | CODBAGZ00053 | IC |  | R225 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| IC374 | PQVIC61CC20N | IC | S | R226 | ERJ2GEJ273X | 27k |  |
| IC381 | C0CBCAD00070 | IC |  | R227 | ERJ2GEJ224 | 220k |  |
| IC901 | C1CB00001657 | IC |  | R231 | ERJ2GEJ223 | 22k |  |
|  |  |  |  | R234 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
|  |  | (TRANSISTORS) |  | R241 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| Q221 | 2SD1819A | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  | R242 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| Q231 | UN521 | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R243 | ERJ2GEJ274 | 270k |  |
| Q243 | B1GBCFJA0029 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  | R251 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| Q251 | PSVTUMG11NTR | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R252 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| Q252 | PSVTUMG11NTR | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R256 | ERJ2GEJ121 | 120 |  |
| Q253 | UN521 | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R257 | ERJ2GEJ121 | 120 |  |
| Q331 | B1GBCFGG0028 | TRANSISTOR(SI) |  | R258 | ERJ2GEJ121 | 120 |  |
| Q361 | 2SB1197KQ | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R261 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| Q362 | B1ABDF000025 | TRANSISTOR (SI) |  | R272 | D1BB4303A055 | 430k |  |
| Q363 | PQVTDTC143E | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R273 | D1BB8203A055 | 820k |  |
| Q373 | PQVTXP151A13 | TRANSISTOR(SI) | S | R312 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
|  |  |  |  | R314 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
|  |  | (DIODES) |  | R315 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| D223 | MA111 | DIODE (SI) | S | R317 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| D361 | B0JCMD000010 | DIODE (SI) | S | R318 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| D373 | MA21D3400L | DIODE (SI) |  | R323 | ERJ2GEJ180 | 18 |  |
| D903 | B0DCCD000011 | DIODE (SI) |  | R324 | ERJ2GEJ180 | 18 |  |
| D904 | B0DCCD000011 | DIODE (SI) |  | R331 | ERJ2GEJ103 | 10k |  |
| LED251 | B3ACB0000115 | DIODE (SI) |  | R333 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| LED252 | B3ACB0000115 | DIODE (SI) |  | R334 | ERJ2GEJ222 | 2.2k |  |
| LED253 | B3ACB0000115 | DIODE (SI) |  | R340 | DOGAR00Z0001 | 0 |  |
| LED254 | B3ACB0000115 | DIODE (SI) |  | R361 | ERJ2GEJ473 | 47k |  |
| LED256 | B3ACB0000115 | DIODE (SI) |  | R362 | ERJ2GEJ561 | 560 |  |
| LED257 | B3ACB0000115 | DIODE (SI) |  | R363 | ERJ2GEJ473 | 47k |  |
| LED258 | B3ACB0000115 | DIODE (SI) |  | R368 | ERJ3GEYJ102 | 1k |  |
| LED261 | B3ACB0000134 | DIODE (SI) |  | R376 | ERJ2GEJ225 | 2.2M |  |
|  |  |  |  | R377 | ERJ3GEYJ106 | 10M |  |
|  |  | (COILS) |  | R401 | ERJ2GEJ101 | 100 |  |
| L326 | G1CR47J00005 | COIL |  | R402 | ERJ2GEJ182 | 1.8k |  |
| L327 | G1CR47J00005 | COIL |  | R906 | ERJ2RKF103X | 10k |  |
| L331 | PQLQR2KB113T | COIL | S | R909 | ERJ2GEJ331 | 330 |  |
| L332 | PQLQR2KB113T | COIL | S | R919 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| L334 | PQLQR2KB113T | COIL | S | R930 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| L373 | G1C470MA0176 | COIL |  | R931 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| L901 | MQLPF18NJFB | COIL |  | R932 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| L902 | MQLPF10NJFB | COIL |  | R933 | ERJ2GEJ331 | 330 |  |
| L903 | MQLRF3N3DFB | COIL |  | R940 | ERJ2GEJ4R7 | 4.7 |  |
| L904 | MQLRF22NJFB | COIL |  | R941 | ERJ2GEJ100 | 10 |  |
| L905 | MQLRF10NJFB | COIL |  | R942 | ERJ2GEJ100 | 10 |  |
| L909 | MQLRF3N9DFB | COIL |  | R943 | DOGAR00Z0001 | 0 |  |
| L911 | MQLRF2N7DFB | COIL |  | R991 | ERJ2GEJ102 | 1k |  |
| L913 | MQLRF18NJFB | COIL |  |  |  |  |  |
| L990 | G1C1R0KA0096 | COIL |  |  |  | (CAPACITORS) |  |
|  |  |  |  | C201 | F1G1H6R0A445 | 6P |  |
|  |  | (COMPONENTS PARTS) |  | C202 | F1G1H6R0A445 | 6P |  |
| CA271 | F5A424740002 | COMPONENTS PARTS |  | C204 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| CA274 | F5A841040004 | COMPONENTS PARTS |  | C206 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| RA201 | EXRV8V472JV | COMPONENTS PARTS |  | C208 | F1J0J1060006 | 10 | S |
| RA251 | D1H83314A013 | COMPONENTS PARTS |  | C211 | EEEFK0J331P | 330P |  |
| RA901 | D1H810240004 | COMPONENTS PARTS |  | C212 | ECUE1C103KBQ | 0.01 | S |
|  |  |  |  | C214 | F1J0J1060006 | 10 | S |
|  |  | (ELECTRICAL PARTS) |  | C215 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| MIC | LOCBAB000052 | BUILTIN-MICROPHONE |  | C221 | ECUE1C103KBQ | 0.01 | S |
| E301 | L5DCBDC00022 | LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY (*3) |  | C222 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| E302 | PQHX11327Z | COVER, LCD COVER SHEET |  | C224 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| E303 | PQHR11065Z | TRANSPARENT PLATE, LCD PLATE |  | C225 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| E304 | PQHX11292Z | PLASTIC PARTS, LCD SHEET |  | C226 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| E305 | PQHR11078Z | GUIDE, LCD |  | C227 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| E306 | PQMC10494Z | MAGNETIC SHIELD, FRAME |  | C231 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| E307 | PQMC10493Z | MAGNETIC SHIELD, COVER |  | C241 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
|  |  |  |  | C242 | ECUE1H101JCQ | 100P | S |
|  |  | (RESISTORS) |  | C246 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| R203 | ERJ2GEJ104 | 100k |  | C272 | ECUV1C474KBV | 0.47 |  |
| R208 | ERJ2GEJ100 | 10 |  | C273 | ECUV1C104KBV | 0.1 |  |
| R209 | ERJ2GEJ104 | 100k |  | C303 | F1G0J1050007 | 1 | S |


| Ref. No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| C305 | ECUE1C103KBQ | 0.01 | S |
| C306 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| C314 | F1G1C183A081 | 0.018 |  |
| C315 | F1G1C183A081 | 0.018 |  |
| C317 | ECST0JY226 | 22 |  |
| C321 | ECST0JY335 | 3.3 |  |
| C333 | ECUE1C103KBQ | 0.01 | S |
| C335 | ECST0JY226 | 22 |  |
| C340 | ECUE1C103KBQ | 0.01 | S |
| C353 | ECUV1H103KBV | 0.01 |  |
| C371 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| C372 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| C373 | EEEFK0J331P | 330P |  |
| C377 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| C381 | EEE0JA101SP | 100P |  |
| C382 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| C384 | ECUV1A105KBV | 1 |  |
| C904 | ECUE1H020CCQ | 2P | S |
| C910 | ECUE1H1R5CCQ | 1.5 | S |
| C911 | ECUE1H470JCQ | 47P | S |
| C917 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C918 | ECUE1H5R0CCQ | 5 |  |
| C922 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C937 | ECUE1H471KBQ | 470P | S |
| C938 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C939 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C940 | ECUE1C103KBQ | 0.01 | S |
| C941 | ECUE1H102KBQ | 0.001 | S |
| C942 | PQCUV0J475MB | 4.7 | S |
| C944 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| C946 | ECUE1H222KBQ | 0.0022 | S |
| C952 | ECUE1H020CCQ | 2P | S |
| C956 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C960 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C962 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C963 | ECUE1H100DCQ | 10P | S |
| C964 | ECUE1H102KBQ | 0.001 | S |
| C965 | ECJ0EC1H221J | 220P |  |
| C976 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| C977 | ECUE1H102KBQ | 0.001 | S |
| C979 | ECUE1H102KBQ | 0.001 | S |
| C980 | ECUE1C103KBQ | 0.01 | S |
| C983 | ECUE1H102KBQ | 0.001 | S |
| C984 | ECUE1H101JCQ | 100P | S |
| C990 | ECUE1H102KBQ | 0.001 | S |
| C991 | ECJ0EC1H050C | 5P |  |
| C992 | F1G1H121A444 | 120P |  |
| C993 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| C996 | F1G1A1040003 | 0.1 |  |
| C997 | ECUE1H0R5CCQ | 0.5 | S |
| C998 | ECUE1H0R5CCQ | 0.5 | S |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  | (OTHERS) |  |
| CN331 | K2HD103D0001 | JACK |  |
| FL901 | J0E2457B0008 | IC FILTER |  |
| X201 | H0J138500003 | CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR |  |

### 21.2.12. Service Fixture and Tools

Note:
(4*) When replaceing the Handset LCD, see How to Replace the Handset LCD (P.198).

| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| EC1 | PFZZ11K13Z | EXTENSION CORD, 11 PIN |  |
| EC2 | PQZZ7K11Z | EXTENSION CORD, 7 PIN |  |
| EC3 | PQZZ8K15Z | EXTENSION CORD, 8 PIN |  |
| EC4 | PQZZ2K12Z | EXTENSION CORD, 2 PIN |  |
| EC5 | PQZZ2K12Z | EXTENSION CORD, 2 PIN |  |
| EC6 | PQZZ4K7Z | EXTENSION CORD, 4 PIN |  |
| EC7 | PQZZ2K12Z | EXTENSION CORD, 2 PIN |  |
| EC8 | PFZZ5K13Z | EXTENSION CORD, 5 PIN |  |


| Ref. <br> No. | Part No. | Part Name \& Description | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| EC9 | PQZZ2K6Z | EXTENSION CORD, 2 PIN |  |
| EC10 | PFZZ18K2Z | EXTENSION CORD, 18 PIN |  |
| EC11 | PQZZ11K8Z | EXTENSION CORD, 11 PIN |  |
| EC12 | PQZZ11K8Z | EXTENSION CORD, 11 PIN |  |
| EC13 | PQZZ8K15Z | EXTENSION CORD, 8 PIN |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  | PQZZ430PIR | TIP OF SOLDERING IRON (*4) |  |
|  | PQZZ430PRB | RUBBER OF SOLDERING IRON (*4) |  |
|  |  | KASIC FACSIMILE TECHNIQUE <br> (for training service techni- <br> cians) |  |

## Note:

Tools and Extension Cords are useful for servicing.
(They make servicing easy.)


[^0]:    When you note the serial number, write down all 11 digits. The serial number may be found on the bottom of the unit.

[^1]:    To make another setting

[^2]:    Note:
    See "Sensor Locations" in Sensors and Switches (P.29).
    REFERENCE:
    Sensor Section (P.157)

[^3]:    O dIGITAL
    KX-FG2452CX: Operation Board

